

110069

अवाप्ति सं०

ACC. No. ~~19299~~

वर्ग सं. 470.07

पुस्तक सं.

Class No. ^{Mou}

Book No.

लेखक

Moulton, Frank

Author. ~~Present~~

शीर्षक

Title. Meath's practical
Latin course for beginners
with a selection of

निर्गम दिनांक
 Date of Issue

उधारकर्ता की सं.
 Borrower's No.

हस्ताक्षर
 Signature

470.07

~~1929~~

Mou

LIBRARY

LAL BHADUR SHASTRI

National Academy of Administration

MUSSOORIE

Accession No.

110069

1. Books are issued for 15 days only but may have to be recalled earlier if urgently required.
2. An over-due charge of 25 Paise per day per volume will be charged.
3. Books may be renewed on request, at the discretion of the Librarian.
4. Periodicals, Rare and Reference books may not be issued and may be consulted only in the Library.
5. Books lost, defaced or injured in any way shall have to be replaced or its double price shall be paid by the borrower.

Help to keep this book fresh clean & moving

HEATH'S PRACTICAL
LATIN COURSE

HARRAP'S SHORT LATIN READINGS

Edited by ALEXANDER DUTHIE, M.A.
Inverness Royal Academy

Each volume contains about 50 pages of
Latin text, and Notes and Vocabulary.

Size $6\frac{3}{4} \times 4\frac{1}{2}$ inches. **1s. 6d.**

First Volumes

READINGS FROM LIVY:
SYPHAX AND MASINISSA

READINGS FROM CÆSAR:
THE GALLIC WAR, Books I-III

READINGS FROM HORACE:
EASIER ODES

READINGS IN ROMAN SOCIAL
HISTORY

READINGS FROM CICERO:
VERRES

READINGS FROM OVID:
ELEGIACS

READINGS FROM OVID: META-
MORPHOSES

READINGS FROM VERGIL:
ÆNEID, Books I-III

READINGS FROM TACITUS:
GERMANICUS

Other volumes in active preparation

GEORGE G. HARRAP & CO. LTD.



THE ROMAN FORUM — *After Von Falke*

HEATH'S PRACTICAL LATIN COURSE

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

FRANK PRESCOTT MOULTON M.A.

WITH A SELECTION OF
EXTRACTS FROM OVID

BY

J. T. PHILLIPSON M.A.

LATE HEADMASTER OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE
FINCHLEY

REVISED EDITION

LONDON

D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY

39-41 PARKER STREET KINGSWAY W.C.

AND AT SYDNEY

First published March 1908

*Reprinted: September 1912; August 1916; February 1918;
February 1920; March 1922; March 1924; August 1925;
September 1926; July 1928; September 1930*

Printed in Great Britain by Turnbull & Spears, Edinburgh

PREFACE

CONCENTRATION and economy of effort are the first conspicuous aims of this book. Things naturally belonging together are grouped together: third declension nouns are followed by third declension adjectives, and the declension of adjectives by the comparison of adjectives. No two difficult and confusing subjects — like, for instance, the conjugation of *iō*-verbs and nouns with *i*-stems — are brought into the same chapter.

No division or grouping of topics can possibly be so made that each chapter will be just enough for a lesson. Therefore into each chapter are grouped such subjects and such exercises as should be studied together, and the teacher is left free to give to each chapter whatever time is necessary. Many chapters will require more than one lesson.

Forms and constructions are introduced, so far as possible, only when they can afterwards be continually used. Connected Latin for reading is introduced early — but not till preparation for it has been made; after being once introduced, it is kept up.

The pronouns are not introduced till after connected discourse, for their meanings and force cannot be understood from detached sentences. When the pronouns are introduced, they are treated with such discrimination and precision that the pupil gains a distinct and accurate knowledge of their use and meanings.

After the second declension the verb is introduced. *Laudō* and *monēō* are studied at the same time, for the two can be learned together just as easily as either alone. Several lessons are then concentrated on the verb, till the entire indicative of three conjugations is learned. This knowledge of verb forms makes possible a greater variety of sentences in connection with the study of the third declension, adjectives, pronouns, etc.

In the perfect system all verbs are formed alike and are therefore learned together. So, later, the subjunctive, imperative, and participles of all conjugations are learned together, with a careful treatment of the method of forming the different parts from the proper stem. After all parts of the verb have been given separately, a verb of each conjugation is reviewed in its entirety.

The treatment of the subjunctive and participles is new, but simple and rational. The common meaning and uses of the subjunctive, as far as possible, are treated first and the other meanings developed from these. The same method is followed in the treatment of the participle.

The *tenses* of the subjunctive, infinitive, and participles are not made so prominent at first as to confuse and overwhelm the pupil while he is trying to learn the *mood*. Later the tenses, including tense sequence, are very carefully and clearly taught.

Indirect discourse is developed so naturally that a pupil can see that indirect discourse is merely the enlargement of the object clause after a verb of knowing, thinking, etc.

The ablative absolute is treated simply and gradually, like other case constructions. It has been customary to say too much about this construction, and bewilder the pupil by giving too many uses at once. Of course the participle with a noun in the ablative often implies cause, condition, and so forth; but this idea has nothing to do with the *case*, for a participle in any case may have the same force. Again, the pupil gets the idea that the participle in the ablative absolute construction means *having been*. Any one who teaches advanced Latin composition realizes the difficulty of correcting this false idea. To avoid the mistaken notion, the ablative absolute is taught progressively and naturally, from examples occurring in connected reading; and nouns with present active participles, or others, are purposely used. (See 333, 334; 344, n. 1; 412, n. 1; 414, n. 3; 420, n. 3 and 4.)

A summary review of each subject throughout the book is given especial emphasis. In connection with some of the reviews a few anecdotes and stories are introduced to give variety and interest to the work.

The great difficulty for the young pupil in his study of Latin—the transition from detached sentences to a real Latin author—is largely overcome by the plan of this book. The sentences used in the exercises, after the first few chapters, are taken mostly from some Latin author, generally Cæsar. As soon as the advancement of the pupil will admit—no sooner—real Cæsar is introduced, at first much simplified, then less and less changed, till the passages are very near to the original. Many of the uses of moods, tenses, cases of nouns, and indefinite pronouns are taught in connection with these connected passages instead of by the usual made-up sentences. This forms better material and serves to economize effort. Opportunity is given to teach some things in preparation for the second-year work not ordinarily covered in the first year. For example, temporal clauses, and the dative with verbs used impersonally in the passive, are made especially clear. If, however, any teacher wishes to defer the treatment of temporal clauses and conditions till the second year, these chapters may be omitted.

The reading lessons have a great advantage over mere anecdotes, because they have continuity of structure and style, and a pupil will gradually come to feel, and to look for, that logical sequence so characteristic of Latin discourse, the observance of which is vitally essential to intelligent translation.

More material for translation is provided, and somewhat fewer and shorter exercises to be written in Latin, than in most introductory books. Every class may take with care and thoroughness what English exercises are given, and both teacher and pupil can feel the satisfaction of having done everything in the book. To most teachers the effort to teach Latin composition beyond simple exercises sufficient to illustrate the rules of syntax, especially during the first two years, does not bring satisfactory returns. If, however, any teacher wishes to give his pupils further practice, he can with excellent effect have them turn back into Latin the translation of the Latin exercises.

The seventy-four chapters of this book will require perhaps a little more time than the same number of chapters in some other books, but the gain is more than commensurate; for, when the

pupil finishes the exercises, he will have read an epitome of the first thirty chapters of Cæsar containing a connected account of the whole Helvetian war. And the work is so gradual and progressive that he will not realize any break in his work when taking up Cæsar. In short, the reading lessons furnish not only a preparation for Cæsar, but a preparation in Cæsar.

A selection of extracts from Ovid, a few fables and some early Roman history, adapted directly from Livy by the author, are given at the end of the book. No young student of Latin ought to miss this, for no other Latin so quickly introduces the learner into the method of thought and speech of the Romans. Yet, if for any reason the teacher wishes to shorten the course, the seventy-four chapters will give the pupils such an acquaintance with the vocabulary and style of Cæsar that the class can begin at once the reading of that author with a feeling of confidence.

It has been the constant aim in preparing this book to secure clearness of statement, adaptation to the class-room, completeness, accuracy, and logical development. The degree of success with which this object has been secured is due largely to the helpful suggestions and criticisms offered by those who have read the manuscript and proof.

FRANK PRESCOTT MOULTON.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. THE ALPHABET. PRONUNCIATION. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS	1
II. SYLLABLES. QUANTITY OF VOWELS. QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES	3
III. ACCENT. GENDER. INFLECTION	5
IV. FIRST DECLENSION	8
V. FIRST DECLENSION, Continued. Laudō : Present Indicative Active	10
VI. FIRST DECLENSION, Continued. Moneō : Present Indicative Active. GENITIVE AND INDIRECT OBJECT	12
VII. SECOND DECLENSION. THE VOCATIVE CASE AND THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS	15
VIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. QUESTIONS	18
IX. SECOND DECLENSION, Continued: Nouns in -er and -ir and Adjectives in -er	21
X. REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	23
XI. Laudō AND Moneō : Future and Imperfect Active	25
XII. Laudō AND Moneō : Present, Future, and Imperfect Passive. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.	27
XIII. CONJUGATION OF Sum : Present, Future, and Imperfect. PREDICATE: NOUN AND ADJECTIVE	30
XIV. CONJUGATION OF Sum : Perfect, Future Perfect, Pluperfect. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.	32
XV. Laudō AND Moneō : INDICATIVE, Completed. PERFECT INFINITIVE	34
XVI. THIRD CONJUGATION: Regō	39
XVII. THIRD CONJUGATION: -iō VERBS	42
XVIII. Regō AND Capiō : INDICATIVE, Completed.	44
XIX. REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS	46
XX. THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems. ABLATIVE OF MAN- NER, ETC.	48
XXI. THIRD DECLENSION: Liquid Stems	51

XXII. THIRD DECLENSION: i -Stems. GENITIVE OF QUALITY	54
XXIII. THIRD DECLENSION: Mixed i -Stems. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE	57
XXIV. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	60
XXV. REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. READING LESSON. <i>Demosthenes the Orator</i>	63
XXVI. READING LESSON WITH INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION	65
XXVII. REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES AND THE RULES OF SYNTAX. READING LESSON	67
XXVIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE, Complete. COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS . .	68
XXIX. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE WITH THE COMPARATIVE	70
XXX. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, Continued. ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE	72
XXXI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: Irregular Comparison. THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE	74
XXXII. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	77
XXXIII. TEN ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius . DECLENSION OF ūnus, duo, trēs, AND mille	80
XXXIV. NUMERALS. READING LESSON	82
XXXV. FOURTH DECLENSION: Stem in -u	84
XXXVI. FIFTH DECLENSION: Stem in -ē . ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT AND ABLATIVE OF TIME	86
XXXVII. REVIEW OF COMPARISON. READING LESSON: <i>Story of Deucalion and Pyrrha</i>	89
XXXVIII. REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius , NUMERALS, ETC. READING LESSON: <i>Story of Deucalion and Pyrrha</i> , Continued	90
XXXIX. RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS	92
XL. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	96
XLI. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: is, idem	99
XLII. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: hic, ille, iste, ipse . .	102
XLIII. REVIEW OF PRONOUNS. READING LESSON: <i>The Golden Touch of Midas</i>	105
XLIV. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. COMPOUND VERBS. READING LESSON	107

CONTENTS

xiii

XLV. DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. READING LESSON	108
XLVI. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Active Voice, All Conjugations. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE	111
XLVII. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Its General Character, SUBJUNCTIVE WITH cum , AND SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT	114
XLVIII. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Passive Voice, All Conjugations. INDIRECT QUESTIONS AND SEQUENCE OF TENSES	117
XLIX. IMPERATIVE MOOD: Active Voice. READING LESSON	121
L. IMPERATIVE MOOD: Passive Voice. READING LESSON	123
LI. INFINITIVE: Active and Passive. COMPLEMENTARY AND OBJECT INFINITIVE. INDIRECT DISCOURSE	125
LII. USES OF THE PARTICIPLES. DATIVE WITH THE GERUNDIVE	128
LIII. GERUND AND SUPINE: FORMATION AND USES	131
LIV. REVIEW OF Laudō : Active with Synopsis. READING LESSON	134
LV. REVIEW OF Laudō : Passive with Synopsis. READING LESSON	135
LVI. REVIEW OF Moneō : Complete. READING LESSON	135
LVII. REVIEW OF Regō AND Capiō : Complete. READING LESSON	136
LVIII. REVIEW OF Audiō : Complete. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE AND RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. READING LESSON	137
LIX. Sum, Possum, Prōsum . DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS AND DATIVE OF SERVICE	139
LX. Volō, Nolō, Malō	141
LXI. Eō AND Adeō . RULES FOR NAMES OF CITIES, AND domus AND rūs	142
LXII. Ferō AND Fīō . DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS	145
LXIII. DEPONENT VERBS. THE ABLATIVE WITH ūtor, fruor , ETC.	146
LXIV. IMPERSONAL VERBS. PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS	148
LXV. TWO ACCUSATIVES AND ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. READING LESSON	150
LXVI. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE. READING LESSON	152

LXVII. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. READING LESSON	154
LXVIII. VERBS OF FEARING AND INDIRECT REQUESTS. HORATORY SUBJUNCTIVE. READING LESSON	155
LXIX. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. READING LESSON	157
LXX. REVIEW OF TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES. READING LESSON	159
LXXI. TENSES OF PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES. READING LESSON	160
LXXII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH dum , dñec , ETC. READING LESSON	163
LXXIII. THE INDICATIVE WITH postquam , ubi , ETC. READING LESSON	164
LXXIV. CONDITIONS AND WISHES	166
SELECTIONS FOR READING	171
Fables	171
Roman History	173
Extracts from Ovid	189
APPENDIX	203
Tables of Declensions, Conjugations, etc.	203
RULES OF SYNTAX	241
VOCABULARY	247
Latin-English Vocabulary	247
English-Latin Vocabulary	279
INDEX	285

HEATH'S PRACTICAL
LATIN COURSE

HEATH'S PRACTICAL LATIN COURSE

CHAPTER I

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *w*.

2. The vowels, as in English, are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All other letters are consonants.

NOTE. — Vowels are letters representing sounds that can be uttered by themselves alone. A consonant can be sounded only in combination with a vowel.

3. Consonants are classified as :

MUTES *b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t.*

LIQUIDS *l, m, n, r.*

SIBILANT *s.*

DOUBLE CONSONANTS . . . *x = cs or gs, and z = ds.*

PRONUNCIATION

Vowels

4. A vowel in Latin has only one sound. This sound is sometimes prolonged and sometimes shortened. A straight mark (*—*), called a *macron*, placed over a vowel shows that the vowel is long; a curved mark (*˘*), called a *breve*, shows that the vowel is short.

NOTE. — As all vowels are either long or short, for convenience the long vowels only are marked; all unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

INTRODUCTORY LATIN

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

§.

Vowels

Long **a** (ā) is sounded like *a* in *father*; short **a** (ă) as *a* in *idea*.
Long **e** (ē) is sounded like *e* in *they*; short **e** (ě) as *e* in *then*.
Long **i** (ī) is sounded like *i* in *machine*; short **i** (ĭ) as *i* in *pin*.
Long **o** (ō) is sounded like *o* in *note*; short **o** (ĕ) as *o* in *obey*.
Long **u** (ū) is sounded like *oo* in *pool*; short **u** (ŭ) as *u* in *pull*.

Diphthongs

6. A diphthong is the combination of two vowels in one syllable. Diphthongs have the following sounds:

ae is sounded like *ai* in *aisle*.
oe is sounded like *oi* in *boil*.
au is sounded like *ou* in *our*.
eu is sounded like *eu* in *feud*.
ei is sounded like *ei* in *eight*.

NOTE. — When two vowels, which ordinarily make a diphthong, are to be pronounced separately, two dots, called *diæresis*, are placed over the second vowel to show that the vowels make two syllables instead of one, as: **coërcëre**, pronounced *co-er-cê-re*, to *coërcë* or *restrain*.

Consonants

7. Consonants are sounded as in English except that **b** before **s** or **t** has the sound of *p*, and **h** is not sounded.

c is always hard like <i>c</i> in <i>come</i> ;	never like <i>c</i> in <i>cent</i> .
g is always hard like <i>g</i> in <i>get</i> ;	never like <i>g</i> in <i>gem</i> .
s is always sharp like <i>s</i> in <i>this</i> ;	never like <i>s</i> in <i>his</i> .
t is always like <i>t</i> in <i>native</i> ;	never like <i>t</i> in <i>nation</i> .
v is always like <i>w</i> in <i>wine</i> ;	never like <i>v</i> in <i>vine</i> .
ch is always like <i>ch</i> in <i>chasm</i> ;	never like <i>ch</i> in <i>chant</i> .

I-Consonant

8. When *i* is followed by a vowel in the same syllable, it has the force of a consonant. The *i*-consonant (or *j*, which is sometimes used in place of it) is pronounced as *y* in *yes, your, yard*, etc., as : *iacet*, pronounced *yá-ket*.

9. Pronounce the following words according to the rules given :

1. *Dūcō, I lead.* 2. *Cantūs avium amāmus, the songs of birds we love.* 3. *Mors est certa, death is certain.* 4. *Hīc liber est tuus, this book is yours.* 5. *Achillēs erat audāx vir, Achilles was a bold man.* 6. *Ītalia est in Eurōpā, Italy is in Europe.* 7. *Prima pars insulae, the first part of the island.* 8. *Hōc genus pugnae, this kind of fighting.* 9. *Hae nātiōnēs, these nations.* 10. *Is quī, he who.* 11. *Aristīdēs vocābātur Iūstus, Aristides was called the Just.* 12. *Urbs Trōiāna ā Graecīs obsidēbātur, the Trojan city was besieged by the Greeks.*

CHAPTER II

SYLLABLES

10. Two vowels with a consonant between them are never pronounced in one syllable. Compare the English *more*, one syllable, with the Latin *mōre*, pronounced *mō-re*, two syllables; the English *reside*, two syllables, and the Latin *resīde*, pronounced *re-sī-de*, three syllables; the English *delicate*, three syllables, with the Latin *dēlicātē*, pronounced *dē-li-cā-tē*, four syllables. *Therefore in a Latin word there are as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs.*

11. a. A single consonant in Latin is always pronounced with the vowel, or diphthong, that follows it, as : *referō*, pronounced *rē-fe-rō*; *domine*, pronounced *dó-mi-ne*.

b. Doubled consonants, like **ll** or **ss**, must be separated and each distinctly sounded, as: **ille**, **fl-le**; **missus**, **mís-sus**. This is like the English *ill-luck* rather than *hilly*; *mis-sent* rather than *missile*; *rat-trap* rather than *rattle*.

c. When two or more different consonants come together, as many as can be pronounced together are sounded with the following vowel, as: **restringō**, **re-strín-gō**.

d. But compound words are divided so as to show the parts of the compound, as: **ab-est** (**ab**, *away* + **est**, *he is*), *he is away*.

12. Divide into syllables these words: **dōnō**, **minimus**, **légātus**, **mittō**, **referre**, **cōnstanter**, **patris**, **intrā**, **ratiō**, **dominus**, **sagitta**.

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

13. a. A vowel before a vowel or **h** is short, as: **dēa**, *goddess*; **nīhil**, *nothing*.

NOTE. — The few exceptions to this rule will be properly marked as they occur.

b. A vowel is short before **nd** or **nt**, as: **cōntēndēt**, *they will contend*.

c. Diphthongs are always long, as: **fōedus**, *treaty*.

d. A vowel, formed by contracting two vowels into one, is long, as: **cōgō** (**cō** + **gō**), *I gather*.

e. A vowel is long before **nf** or **ns**, as: **infāns**, *child*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

14. A syllable is long or short according to the time it takes to pronounce it properly.

a. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel, as: **audāx**, *bold*.

b. A syllable is long by position if its vowel is followed by two or more consonants (except a mute before *l* or *r*)

even though the vowel itself be short, as : *impéllunt, they impel.*

NOTE. — The reason for this is evident ; if there are two or more consonants (except a mute with *l* or *r*), one at least of these consonants must be pronounced with the vowel before it ; and it takes longer to pronounce distinctly a vowel and a consonant than to pronounce a vowel alone. *But the vowel itself must nevertheless be pronounced short.*

Names of Syllables

15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult is called the *antepenult*.

Enclitics

16. An enclitic is a word, generally of one syllable, attached to another word. The most common are *-ne*, the sign of a question, *-que*, *and*, *-ve*, *or*, and sometimes *cum*, *with*, as : *mēcum, with me* ; *vidēsne, do you see ?*

CHAPTER III

ACCENT

17. *a.* Words of two syllables are accented on the penult, as : *dōnum, gift* ; *déa, goddess*.

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long ; on the antepenult, if the penult is short, as : *amāmus, referre, hómīnēs, fīlius*.

c. When an enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable before the enclitic, whether that syllable is long or short, as : *filiáque*.

18. Divide into syllables, mark the accent, and pronounce the following words : *puer, puella, dominus, cōnferō, cōnferre, fīlius, contulī, conlātus, nātiō, deaque, habēsne, Orgetorix, Achillēs, Pompēius*.

GENDER

19. Gender in Latin is either Natural, as in English, or merely Grammatical, thus :

a. Names of males are masculine, names of females are feminine.

b. Names of objects neither male nor female, called *neuter* (that is, *neither* gender) in English, are masculine, feminine, or neuter, as indicated by certain endings. (These endings are given later.)

INFLECTION

20. Inflection is the change made in the form of a word to indicate case, number, mood, tense, etc.

a. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles, to denote gender, number, and case, is called *declension*.

b. The inflection of verbs to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person is called *conjugation*.

c. Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections have no inflection, and are sometimes called *particles*.

Declension

21. Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles are declined in two numbers, *singular* and *plural*; and in five cases, *nominative*, *accusative*, *genitive*, *dative*, and *ablative*.

a. The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence.

b. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb. It is used also after some prepositions.

c. The Genitive corresponds to the English Possessive or the Objective with the preposition *of*.

d. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object. It may usually be translated by *to* or *for*.

c. The Ablative may generally be translated by *with, by, from*. It is used also with many prepositions.

NOTE. — There is also a Vocative case, used, however, only in addressing a person; and a Locative case, used only with names of cities and a very few other words. These two cases will be given and explained later, as they are needed.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — No division or grouping of topics can possibly be so made that each chapter will be just enough for a lesson in all schools. Therefore into each chapter are grouped such subjects and such exercises as should be studied together, and the teacher is left free to give to each chapter whatever time is necessary. Many chapters will require more than a lesson. For further suggestions see preface.



SCHOLA ROMANA — A ROMAN SCHOOL

CHAPTER IV

FIRST DECLENSION

Stem in **-ā-**

22.

Paradigm

SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puella, a girl (as subject)</i>	-a
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puellam, a girl (as object)</i>	-am
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puellae, of a girl or a girl's</i>	-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puellae, to or for a girl</i>	-ae
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puellā, with, by, from, a girl</i>	-ā
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>puellae, girls (as subject)</i>	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>puellās, girls (as object)</i>	-ās
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>puellārum, of girls or girls'</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>puellis, to or for girls</i>	-is
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>puellis, with, by, from, girls</i>	-is

a. There is no article in Latin. Therefore **puella** may be translated *a girl* or *the girl*; the plural, **puellae**, *girls* or *the girls*.

b. That part of the word which is not changed by inflection is the root, as **puell-**. To the root is often added a vowel which helps in inflection. This vowel is called the stem-vowel, or characteristic vowel. The root, with the stem-vowel added, is the stem; thus the base **puell-**, + the stem-vowel **-ā-**, gives the stem **puellā-**. The terminations consist of case-endings combined with the stem-vowel; but sometimes the stem-vowel disappears, and sometimes the case-ending.

c. The root may be found by dropping the termination from the genitive singular.

d. In Latin adjectives are declined like nouns, as follows:

23.

Paradigm

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hasta longa, a long spear</i>	<i>hastae longae, long spears</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hastam longam, a long spear</i>	<i>hastās longās, long spears</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hastae longae, of a long spear</i>	<i>hastārum longārum, of long spears</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hastae longae, to or for a long spear</i>	<i>hastīs longīs, to or for long spears</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hastā longā, with, etc., a long spear</i>	<i>hastīs longīs, with, etc., long spears</i>

24. RULE OF GENDER. *Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. See 19, a and b.*

25.

VOCABULARY

<i>hasta, f., spear.</i>	<i>stella, f., star.</i>
<i>tuba, f., trumpet.</i>	<i>āla, f., wing.</i>
<i>aquila, f., eagle.</i>	<i>magna, adj., large, great.</i>
<i>agricola, m., farmer.</i>	<i>longa, adj., long.</i>
<i>lūna, f., moon.</i>	<i>parva, adj., small, little.</i>
<i>rēgīna, f., queen.</i>	<i>et, conj., and.</i>

Decline the nouns and adjectives in the vocabulary. Then, observing the meaning of the cases as given in the paradigms, translate the following

EXERCISES

26. 1. *Tuba agricolae.* 2. *Tubā et hastā rēgīnae.* 3. *Lūnae et stellārum.* 4. *Aquilārum ālae longae.* 5. *Tubīs et hastīs longīs.* 6. *Puellae tubā parvā.* 7. *Tubārum et hastārum.* 8. *Hastā longā.* 9. *Parvārum puellārum tubae.* 10. *Magnīs tubīs agricolārum.*

27. 1. *The farmer's spear.* 2. *By the moon and stars.*

3. For the queen. 4. Of the moon and stars. 5. With a small trumpet and a long spear. 6. With the farmer's long spears. 7. To the moon and stars. 8. The long wings of the eagle.

CHAPTER V

FIRST DECLENSION (*continued*)

CONJUGATION OF LAUDŌ: Present Indicative Active

28.

Paradigm

PERSON	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1st. laudō, <i>I praise, am praising, do praise</i>		-ō, <i>I</i>
2d. laudās, <i>you praise, are praising, do praise</i>		-s, <i>you (thou)</i>
3d. laudat, <i>he praises, is praising, does praise</i>		-t, <i>he</i>
PLURAL		
1st. laudāmus, <i>we praise, are praising, do praise</i>		-mus, <i>we</i>
2d. laudātis, <i>you praise, are praising, do praise</i>		-tis, <i>you</i>
3d. laudant, <i>they praise, are praising, do praise</i>		-nt, <i>they</i>

a. The present stem of laudō is laudā-. The stem-vowel -ā- is dropped before -ō in the first person.

b. The **root** laud- (compare 22, b), which appears in all forms of the verb, is sometimes called the verb-stem.

c. As each person has a special personal ending, the subject, when a pronoun, is not expressed, unless it be emphatic. Learn the list of personal endings.

d. In Latin there is but one form for the present tense. So laudat stands for the simple form, progressive form, or emphatic form, and may mean *he praises, he is praising, or he does praise*. To make the verb interrogative, -ne (16) is attached, as: laudāsne? *do you praise?*

RULES OF SYNTAX

29. *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.*
 30. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*
 31. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

NOTE. — A finite verb is a verb not in the infinitive mood. A transitive verb is one that admits of a direct object.

32.

VOCABULARY

poëta, m., *poet.*

aqua, f., *water.*

sagitta, f., *arrow.*

rosa, f., *rose.*

terra, f., *land.*

portō, *carry, bring.*

pugnō, *fight.*

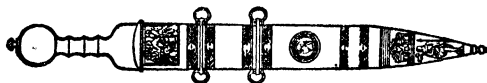
vocō, *call.*

arō, *plough.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

EXERCISES

33. 1. Portās, portāmus, portantne? 2. Pugnātis, nōn pugnat, hastam longam portat. 3. Hastis et sagittis nōn pugnāmus. 4. Poëta rēginam laudat. 5. Arantne agricolae terram? 6. Rēgina agricolae rosās magnās laudat. 7. Agricolae puellās parvās laudāmus. 8. Portātisne aquam?
34. 1. I call, they call, we call. 2. You do not fight, he carries, do they praise? 3. We praise the queen. 4. The queen praises the girls. 5. The farmer is ploughing the land. 6. The small girls are carrying large roses. 7. Does the farmer carry a long spear?



GLADIUS

CHAPTER VI

FIRST DECLENSION (*continued*)CONJUGATION OF **MONEŌ**: Present Indicative Active

Genitive and Indirect Object

35.

PERSON

SINGULAR

1st. moneō, *I advise, am advising, do advise*2d. monēs, *you advise, are advising, do advise*3d. monet, *he advises, is advising, does advise*

PLURAL

1st. monēmus, *we advise, are advising, do advise*2d. monētis, *you advise, are advising, do advise*3d. monent, *they advise, are advising, do advise*

a. The present stem of **moneō**, a verb of the second or **ē**-conjugation, is **monē-**; base **mon-**.

b. The endings of **moneō** are the same as those of **laudō**, and the two verbs are conjugated alike, except that in **laudō** the **-ā-** disappears before **-ō** in the first person, while the **-ē-** in **moneō** is retained and shortened (13, a).

c. The vowels **a** and **e**, characteristic respectively of the first and second conjugations, are long (**ā** and **ē**) except before a vowel (13, a) or **nd** and **nt** (13, b), and before *final m, r, and t*.

36.

VOCABULARY

fābula, f., *story*.nauta, m., *sailor*.silva, f., *forest, woods*.via, f., *road, street, way*.in, prep., *in* or *on*, with the
abl.; or *into*, with the acc.cūr, adv., *why?*nārrō, -āre, *tell, narrate*.dō, dare, *give*.videō, -ēre, *see*.habeō, -ēre, *have*.doceō, -ēre, *teach*.quis, interrog. pronoun,
who?

a. The letters **-āre** and **-ēre**, after the verbs in the vocabulary, are the terminations for the infinitive, as: **nārrō**, *I tell*; **nārrāre**, *to tell*; **moneō**, *I advise*; **monēre**, *to advise*. These terminations show whether the verbs belong to the first conjugation like **laudō**, or to the second conjugation like **moneō**. The **a** in the stem of **dare** is, contrary to rule, short.

37. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Rosās puellārum videō**, { *I see the girls' roses,*
or, *I see the roses of the girls.*
2. **Viās silvæ videō**, *I see the roads of the forest.*

The first sentence does not mean that I see all roses, but simply those which belong to the girls. The word **puellārum** thus limits **rosās**. In the same way **silvæ** limits **viās** in 2.

38. RULE. *A noun or pronoun used to limit another, not meaning the same person or thing, is in the genitive case.*

a. When the genitive denotes possession, as in the first sentence, it is often called *the possessive genitive* or *the genitive of possession*, otherwise merely the *limiting genitive*.

39. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Puellæ rosās dō, { *I give roses to the girl,*
or, *I give the girl roses.*

a. In this sentence the dative **puellæ** represents the person to whom I give the roses, and is called the *indirect object*. The word *to* is not always written in English before the indirect object.

40. RULE. *The indirect object is in the dative.*

41. Order of Words

a. The order of words in Latin is quite varied, and must be learned largely by observation. The regular, or normal, order is:

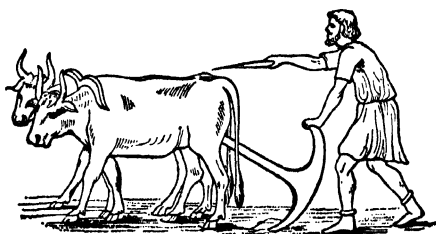
subject	modifiers	indirect	direct	modifiers	verb.
	of subject	object	object	of verb	

b. A genitive or an adjective, if emphatic, generally comes before the noun it limits, otherwise after it. The most common adjectives, like **bonus**, **parvus**, **multus**, etc., very often precede the noun, because by nature they are emphatic.

EXERCISES

42. 1. Vidēs, nōn vident, vidēmusne? 2. Docet, docēre, docētis, quis docet? 3. In viā, in viam, in silvās; viam in silvīs nōn videō. 4. Quis nautam in viā videt? 5. Parvās rosās agricolae vidēmus. 6. Agricola puellīs fābulās nārrat. 7. Quis rēgīnae rosās dat? 8. Nauta tubam et hastam longam habet. 9. Puellae rēgīnae fābulam nārrant et rēgīna puellās laudat. 10. Cūr nautae fābulās longās nārrātis?

43. 1. He sees, we see, to see, do you see? 2. They have, he has, who has? 3. I am teaching, we are teaching, you do not teach. 4. The sailor tells a long story to the queen. 5. The queen praises the story of the sailor. 6. The farmer gives roses to the little girls. 7. Who sees the small girls in the street?



AGRICOLA ARAT

CHAPTER VII

SECOND DECLENSION: Stem in -O-

The Vocative Case and the Ablative of Means

44.

Paradigm

SINGULAR					
	servus, m.	filius, m.	bellum, n.	cōnsilium, n.	
	<i>slave</i>	<i>son</i>	<i>war</i>	<i>plan</i>	
Stem:	servo-	filio-	bello-	cōnsilio-	TERMINATIONS
Root:	serv-	fili-	bell-	cōnsili-	
					MAS. NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	servus	filius	bellum	cōnsilium	-us -um
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	filium	bellum	cōnsilium	-um -um
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	filiī	bellī	cōnsiliī	-ī -ī
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	filiō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō -ō
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	filiō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō -ō
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	servī	filiī	bella	cōnsilia	-ī -a
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs	filiōs	bella	cōnsilia	-ōs -a
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum	filiōrum	bellōrum	cōnsiliōrum	-ōrum -ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs	filiīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs -īs
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs	filiīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs -īs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us of the second declension ends in -e, as *serve*, *O slave*. Since in other nouns of this declension, and in all nouns of other declensions, both singular and plural, the vocative has the same form as the nominative, the vocative is not given in the paradigms.

b. Nouns ending in -ius and -ium contract the -iī of the genitive to -ī, as *fili* for *filiī*, but the contracted form retains the accent of the uncontracted form, even if the penult be short, as *cōnsilī* for *cōnsiliī*.

c. Nouns in **-ius** contract the **-ie** in the vocative to **-ī** and retain the accent of the nominative, as : **Horātius**, voc. **Horātī** (not **Horātie**), (*O*) *Horatius* ; **filī** (not **filie**), (*O*) *son*.

d. In the neuter of all declensions the nominative and accusative cases have the same form, and in the plural end in **-a**.

45. There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the final letter (characteristic) of the stem, and by the termination of the genitive singular, thus :

DECLENSION	STEM-VOWEL (OR CHARACTERISTIC)	TERMINATION OF THE GENITIVE
I	ā	-ae
II	o	-i
III	i, or a consonant	-is
IV	u	-ūs
V	ē	-ēi

NOTE. — The termination of the genitive will hereafter be given after each noun in the vocabularies to show to which declension it belongs.

46. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Hastīs, domine,¹ servōs armant,** *master, they are arming the slaves with spears.*
2. **Servī vigilantīā oppidum servant,** *the slaves by vigilance save the town.*

RULES OF SYNTAX

47. *The vocative is used in addressing a person.*
48. *The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition.*

¹ The vocative seldom comes first in the sentence.

49.

VOCABULARY

gladius , -ī, m., <i>sword</i> .	vigilantia , -ae, f., <i>vigilance,</i> <i>watchfulness.</i>
dominus , -ī, m., <i>master</i> .	deus , -ī, m., <i>god</i> .
mūrus , -ī, m., <i>wall</i> .	dea , -ae, f., <i>goddess</i> .
hortus , -ī, m., <i>garden</i> .	armō , -āre, <i>arm</i> .
dōnum , -ī, n., <i>gift</i> .	servō , -āre, <i>save</i> .
oppidum , -ī, n., <i>town</i> .	dēleō , -ēre, <i>destroy</i> .
servus , -ī, m., <i>slave</i> .	monēō , -ēre, <i>advise, warn</i> .
templum , -ī, n., <i>temple</i> .	

EXERCISES

50. 1. Servōrum, servīs, servī, (O)¹ serve! 2. Dominī hortus mūrum habet. 3. Quis in hortum aquam portat? 4. In hortō filiōs et filiās vidēmus. 5. Quis dōna filiīs² et filiābus³ portat? 6. Vidēsne templa deōrum et deārum in oppidō? 7. Mūrōs oppidī hastā et gladiō dēlent. 8. Quis, fili, servō gladium et tubam dat? 9. Dominus gladiō et tubā servum armat. 10. Habēs, serve, dōnum gladii et tubae; tubā dominī filiōs vocās, gladiō pugnās.

51. 1. Of the master, for the master, (O) master,¹ (O) son.¹ 2. By war, of wars, for war, for the son, of the son. 3. The plans of the master, by the master's plans. 4. The slave teaches the master's sons. 5. We see the temples of the gods and goddesses. 6. The slaves are bringing gifts for the gods² and goddesses.³ 7. The master praises the vigilance of the slave. 8. (O) slave, who is calling the master's sons with the trumpet?

¹ With the vocative, this word *O* may be used or omitted in both Latin and English, according to the sense.

² The indirect object (40) is sometimes translated by *for* (21, c).

³ **Filia**, *daughter*, and **dea**, *goddess*, nouns of the first declension, though otherwise regular, have **filiābus** and **deābus** in the dative and ablative plural to distinguish them from the corresponding forms of **filius** and **deus**.

CHAPTER VIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Questions. Agreement of Adjectives

52.

Paradigm

SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i> bonus dominus	bona puella	bonum dñum
<i>Acc.</i> bonum dominum	bonam puellam	bonum dñum
<i>Gen.</i> bonī dominī	bonae puellae	bonī dñī
<i>Dat.</i> bonō dominō	bonae puellae	bonō dñō
<i>Abl.</i> bonō dominō	bonā puellā	bonō dñō
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i> bonī dominī	bonae puellae	bona dña
<i>Acc.</i> bonōs dominos	bonās puellās	bona dña
<i>Gen.</i> bonōrum dominōrum	bonārum puellārum	bonōrum dñōrum
<i>Dat.</i> bonīs dominīs	bonīs puellīs	bonīs dñīs
<i>Abl.</i> bonīs dominīs	bonīs puellīs	bonīs dñīs

a. From the paradigm (see also 23) it is seen that adjectives are declined like nouns, and that the endings change according to the gender of the nouns to which they belong.

53. Decline *bonus*, *good*, in the three genders, thus :

SINGULAR			
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

54. RULE. *An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs.*

55. Though an adjective must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case, it may differ in form. For example, if a noun of the first declension is masculine, the form of the adjective must be masculine, thus :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> bonus agricola	bonī agricolae
<i>Acc.</i> bonum agricolam	bonōs agricolās
<i>Gen.</i> bonī agricolae	bonōrum agricolārum
<i>Dat.</i> bonō agricolae	bonīs agricolīs
<i>Abl.</i> bonō agricolā	bonīs agricolīs

56. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Quis filium agricolae videt? *Who sees the farmer's son?*
 2. Cūr dominus servōs armat? *Why does the master arm the slaves?*
 3. Vidēsne filium agricolae?
 4. Agricolaene filium vidēs?
 5. Filiumne agricolae vidēs?
- } *Do you see the farmer's son?*
6. Nōnne filium agricolae vidēs? *Do you not see the farmer's son?*

a. An interrogative sentence, in Latin as in English, may be introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb, as in 1 and 2.

b. If the interrogative sentence has no interrogative pronoun or adverb, the enclitic *-ne* (see 16) is generally attached to the word about which the question is asked. This word usually comes at the beginning of the sentence. As the verb usually contains the leading idea, that very frequently comes first, as in 3. In 4 the question is whether you see the son of the *farmer* rather than the son of some other man. (Cf. 41, *b.*) In 5 the

question is whether you see the *son* of the farmer instead of his daughter, or some other relative. In 6 the question is whether you do *not* see the farmer's son, which implies that the questioner supposes that you do see him.

c. In answering, the verb is generally repeated, as :

Vidēsne viam, do you see the road? Videō, yes; I see it.

57.

VOCABULARY

carrus, -ī, m., <i>wagon.</i>	longus, -a, -um, <i>long.</i>
equus, -ī, m., <i>horse.</i>	magnus, -a, -um, <i>large,</i>
numerus, -ī, m., <i>number.</i>	<i>great, big.</i>
frūmentum, -ī, n., <i>grain.</i>	parvus, -a, -um, <i>little,</i>
auxilium, -ī, n., <i>help,</i>	<i>small.</i>
<i>aid.</i>	novus, -a, -um, <i>new.</i>
cōpia, -ae, f., <i>supply,</i>	multus, -a, -um, <i>much;</i>
<i>abundance; plur.,</i>	<i>plur., many.</i>
<i>forces, troops.</i>	rogō, -āre, <i>ask, ask for.</i>

58.

EXERCISES

1. Bonus agricola magnum numerum equōrum et carrōrum habet. 2. In oppidō multōs carrōs nōn habēmus. 3. Bonī agricolae multum frūmentum in oppidum portant. 4. Quis auxilium rogat? Dominus auxilium rogat. 5. Rogāsne, parve fili, auxilium? Nōn rogō. 6. Nōne servī auxilium rogant? 7. Parvāsne puellās vidētis? 8. Magnās puellās vidēmus. 9. Filiāsne bonī agricolae vidēs? 10. Filiōs, nōn filiās, videō.

59. 1. We have a great supply of grain. 2. Many farmers have large wagons. 3. In the good farmer's new wagon. 4. Who is fighting with the long spear and large sword? 5. Who teaches the queen's sons and daughters? 6. Do you not praise the master's slave? 7. Do the slaves teach the master's sons? (Read 56, *b*; then write 7 in several ways.)

CHAPTER IX

SECOND DECLENSION (*continued*)

Nouns in **-er** and **-ir** and Adjectives in **-er**

60.

Paradigm

	puer, m., <i>boy</i>	ager, m., <i>field</i>	vir, m., <i>man</i>	
Stem :	puero-	agro-	viro-	
Root :	puer-	agr-	vir-	
	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	—
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

61. *a.* The masculine form of the adjective **miser, -era, -erum, poor, pitiable**, is declined like **puer**, thus :

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	miser	misera	miserum
<i>Acc.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>Gen.</i>	miserī	miserae	miserī
	etc.	etc.	etc.

b. The masculine form of the adjective **aeger**, **-gra**, **-grum**, *sick*, is declined like **ager**, thus :

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
<i>Nom.</i>	ager	aegra	aegrum
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrī etc.	aegrae etc.	aegrī etc.

Complete the declension of **miser** and **aeger**.

62. *a.* Nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are declined like **servus** (44), except that the nominative has no **-us**.

b. **Ager** is like **puer**, except that the **o** occurs only in the nominative. Most nouns in **-er** are declined like **ager**. The genitive shows which paradigm is to be followed.

c. Some adjectives in **-er** are declined like **miser** and some like **aeger**. The vocabulary will show by the forms given for the feminine and neuter whether **o** is retained in inflection as in **puer** or dropped as in **ager**.

d. Decline together **pulcher equus**, **asper nauta**, **pulchrum dōnum**, **novus liber**, **liber gener**.

63. RULE OF GENDER. *Nouns of the second declension ending in -us, -er, and -ir are masculine; those in -um are neuter.*

64.

VOCABULARY

gener , -erī , m., <i>son-in-law</i> .	asper , -era , -erum , <i>rough</i> .
liber , -brī , m., <i>book</i> .	tener , -era , -erum , <i>tender</i> .
magister , -trī , m., <i>master</i> . ¹	liber , -era , -erum , <i>free</i> .
caper , -prī , m., <i>goat</i> .	liberī , -ōrum , plu., m., <i>children</i> . ²
niger , -gra , -grum , <i>black</i> .	liberō , -āre , <i>liberate, free</i> .
pulcher , -chra , -chrum , <i>beautiful</i> .	labōrō , -āre , <i>work, toil</i> .

¹ **Magister** means *master, director, teacher*. **Dominus** means *master, proprietor, owner*, especially of slaves.

² In Rome the *family*, **famīlia**, often included the entire household, sometimes containing many slaves. So the children were called **liberī**, the free ones, in distinction from the slaves.

EXERCISES

65. 1. In agrīs asperīs, novī librī, liberī virī, dōna pulchra.
 2. Tenerae puellae, nigrī equī, miserō equō, nautae asperō.
 3. Parvus puer nigrum caprum habet. 4. Magister bonō
 puerō novum librum dat. 5. Vidēsne, parve puer, pulchra
 dōna magistrī? 6. Vir liberīs fābulam longam nārrat.
 7. Miserī servī in dominī agrīs labōrant. 8. Cūr, domine,
 miserum servum nōn liberās? 9. Nōnne filium virī et
 generum in hortō vidēs? 10. Magister filiōs et filiās ge-
 nerī docet.

66. 1. Of the new book, for the black horse. 2. Of the
 free man, for the sick man's daughters. 3. The master's
 slave is toiling in the field. 4. He gives the sons and daugh-
 ters beautiful gifts. 5. The children have a large horse and
 a small goat. 6. Do you see the boy's beautiful books?
 7. The poor slave does not have a new book.

CHAPTER X

REVIEW

67. Review the rules for pronunciation, quantity, and accent,
 4-17; the paradigms, 22, 23, 28, 35, 44, 52, 53, 60; the vocabu-
 laries, 25, 32, 36, 49, 57, 64; and rules of syntax thus far given.

Decline **poēta**, **fābula**, **numerus**, **auxilium**, **frūmentum**,
gener, **liber**; the adjectives **longus**, **tener**, **pulcher**, in the
 three genders; and decline together **aeger nauta**, **novus**
gladius, **liber vir**, **asper caper**. Give the genitive and voca-
 tive singular and plural of **dominus**, **filius**, and **magister**.

Conjugate **portō**, **videō**, **servō**, and **doceō** in the present
 indicative. Write out the list of terminations of the first declen-
 sion; of the second declension, masculine and feminine; also
 the list of personal endings of the verb.

EXERCISES

68. 1. Auxiliō novae lūnae et stellārum viam asperam in silvā vidēmus. 2. Vidēsne, serve, puerī nigrōs caprōs? Nōn videō, domine. 3. Magisterne filiōs et filiās liberī virī docet? 4. Nauta asper pulchrae¹ virī filiae fābulam nārrat. 5. Fīliū rēgīnae dōna multa et pulchra in templum portant. 6. In pulchrīs deōrum templīs multa dōna vidētis. 7. Miserī agricolae servī asperīs in² agrīs labōrant. 8. Nōnne dominus vigilantiam servōrum miserōrum laudat? 9. Quis, parve puer, agricolae liberōs tubā vocat? 10. Nautae asperī in terrā gladiīs et hastīs pugnant.

69. 1. Horatius, do you see in the town the temple of the gods? 2. Yes,³ master; and I am bringing gifts into the temple for the gods and goddesses. 3. Who teaches the sons and daughters of the queen? 4. The son-in-law of Horatius gives the farmer's son a black horse. 5. With the black horse the boy ploughs the rough fields.

¹ When an adjective and a genitive both limit the same noun, the order often is | adjective | ¹genitive | ²noun | ³.

² The preposition often, as here, comes between the adjective and the noun.

³ 56, c.



DENARIUS ROMANUS

▲ Roman coin with the head of Julius Caesar

CHAPTER XI

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Future Active and Imperfect

70.

I. laudō, -āre

<i>Future</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudābō, <i>I shall praise</i>	laudābimus, <i>we shall praise</i>
laudābis, <i>you will praise</i>	laudābitis, <i>you will praise</i>
laudābit, <i>he will praise</i>	laudābunt, <i>they will praise</i>

<i>Imperfect</i>	
SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
laudābam, <i>I was praising, I praised</i>	-ō, or -m, <i>I</i>
laudābās, <i>you were praising, you praised</i>	-s <i>you (thou)</i>
laudābat, <i>he was praising, he praised</i>	-t, <i>he</i>
PLURAL	
laudābāmus, <i>we were praising, we praised</i>	-mus, <i>we</i>
laudābātis, <i>you were praising, you praised</i>	-tis, <i>you</i>
laudābant, <i>they were praising, they praised</i>	-nt, <i>they</i>

II. moneō, -ēre			
<i>Future</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbis	monēbitis	monēbās	monēbātis
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbat	monēbant

a. The personal endings of the imperfect are the same as those of the present (28) and future, except that in the first person singular the imperfect has **-m**, the present and future **-ō**. Learn the table of personal endings given above.

b. The imperfect may be formed from the present stem (28, *a*) by inserting *-bā-* (cf. 35, *c*) before the personal endings (28). This *-bā-* is called the tense-sign of the imperfect. The vowel before *-bā-* is long.

c. The tense-sign of the future is *-bi-*, modified in the first singular to *-b-* and in the third plural to *-bu-*.

d. Conjugate all verbs whose infinitive ends in *-āre*, like *laudō*; those whose infinitive ends in *-ēre*, like *moneō*. Observe the meaning of the tenses as given for *laudō*.

71.

VOCABULARY

populus, *-ī*, m., *people*.

rēgnum, *-ī*, n., *power, sovereign power, royalty*.

victōria, *-ae*, f., *victory*.

castra, *-ōrum*, n., plu., *camp*.

occupō, *-āre*, *seize, occupy*.

audeō, *-ēre*, *dare*.

dēbeō, *-ēre*, *ought*.

obtineō, *-ēre*, *hold, obtain*.

moveō, *-ēre*, *move*.

nūntiō, *-āre*, *announce, report*.

EXERCISES

72. 1. *Laudās, laudābās, laudābunt*. 2. *Movet, movēbat, movēbit*. 3. *Movēbāmus, pugnābimus, pugnāmus, pugnāre dēbēmus*. 4. *Portō, portābis, portābant*. 5. *Rogātis, rogābimus, rogāre dēbent*. 6. *Nōnne servī oppidum occupābant?* 7. *Cūr castra movēre nōn audētis?* 8. *Victōriam cōpiīs nūntiābimus*. 9. *Miserī servī aquam in hortum dominō portābant*. 10. *Quis rēgnum obtinet?* *Populus rēgnum obtinēre dēbet*.

73. 1. *He praises, he praised, he will praise*. 2. *They were praising, you are praising, we shall praise*. 3. *We shall move, he is moving, I ought to move*. 4. *Does he call? Who was ploughing?* 5. *Does not the farmer praise the boy?* 6. *A good friend is bringing water for the sick boy*. 7. *We ought by vigilance to save the town*.

CHAPTER XII

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Present, Future, and Imperfect Passive**Ablative of Agent****74. laudō, -āre***Present*

SINGULAR

PERSONAL ENDINGS

laudor, <i>I am praised, am being praised</i>	-r
laudāris (-re), <i>you are praised, are being praised</i>	-ris ¹
laudātur, <i>he is praised, is being praised</i>	-tur

PLURAL

laudāmur, <i>we are praised, are being praised</i>	-mur
laudāminī, <i>you are praised, are being praised</i>	-minī
laudantur, <i>they are praised, are being praised</i>	-ntur

Future

SINGULAR

PLURAL

laudābor, <i>I shall be praised</i>	laudābimur, <i>we shall be praised</i>
laudāberis (-re), <i>you will be praised</i>	laudābiminī, <i>you will be praised</i>
laudābitur, <i>he will be praised</i>	laudābuntur, <i>they will be praised</i>

Imperfect

SINGULAR

laudābar, <i>I was praised, I was being praised</i>
laudābāris (-re), <i>you were praised, you were being praised</i>
laudābātur, <i>he was praised, was being praised</i>

PLURAL

laudābāmur, <i>we were praised, were being praised</i>
laudābāminī, <i>you were praised, were being praised</i>
laudābantur, <i>they were praised, were being praised</i>

¹ In the second singular passive the ending **-re** is sometimes used instead of **-ris**, as : **laudāre** for **laudāris**.

75. moneō, -ēre		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
	SINGULAR	
1. moneor	monēbor	monēbar
2. monēris (-re)	monēberis (-re)	monēbāris (-re)
3. monētur	monēbitur	monēbātur
	PLURAL	
1. monēmur	monēbimur	monēbāmur
2. monēminī	monēbiminī	monēbāminī
3. monentur	monēbuntur	monēbantur

a. For the translation of 75 compare 74.

b. Review 70, a, b, c, d. The passive may be made from the active by merely substituting the passive endings (74) for the active (70). Learn very carefully the two sets of endings.

c. The present infinitive passive of the first and second conjugations may be formed from the infinitive active by changing the final e to ī, as : laudāre, to praise, laudārī, to be praised ; monēre, to advise, monērī, to be advised.

d. Observe from the translations of 74 that the English passive is formed by using the *perfect passive participle* with some form of the auxiliary verb *be*. Carefully distinguish between such English forms as the progressive active, *I was praising*, and the passive, *I was praised*, or *I was being praised*.

76. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Active

Magister puerum laudat, the master praises the boy.

2. Passive

Puer ā magistrō laudātur, the boy is praised by the master.

a. That which is the object of the verb in the active becomes the subject in the passive. Of course if the verb has no object

in the active, there will be no passive, as: *puer ambulat, the boy walks.* [No passive.]

b. The subject of the active, if a person, becomes the agent in the passive. The agent is the person by whom something is done, and is denoted by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

c. Before a consonant *ā* (rarely *ab*) is used, as *ā magistrō*; before a vowel or *h*, *ab* is used, as *ab agricolā*; just as in English we say *a pear*, but *an apple*.

77. RULE. *The personal agent with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

NOTE. — Observe that the agent is a person and always takes the preposition; the means is that *by* or *with* which something is done, and never takes the preposition (46, 48), thus: *the boy was wounded by a friend* (agent) *with a sword* (means), *puer gladiō ab amīcō volnerābātur*.

78.

VOCABULARY

<i>amīcus, -ī, m., friend.</i>	<i>volnerō, -āre, wound.</i>
<i>tyrannus, -ī, m., tyrant.</i>	<i>vāstō, -āre, devastate, lay waste.</i>
<i>Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul.</i>	<i>terreō, -ēre, frighten.</i>
<i>ōlim, adv., once, formerly.</i>	<i>habitō, -āre, live, dwell.</i>
<i>ubi, adv., where.</i>	<i>amō, -āre, love.</i>

America, -ae, f., America

EXERCISES

79. 1. *Laudāris, laudābāris, laudāberis.* 2. *Monēmur, monēbāminī, monēbuntur.* 3. *Laudābit, laudābiminī, docēbitur.* 4. *Vocāmur, vidēbitur, vidēbant, monēris.* 5. *Multa oppida bellō dēlēbantur.* 6. *In Galliā ōlim rēgnum ā tyrannō occupābātur.* 7. *In Americā ā liberō populō rēgnum obtinētur.* 8. *Dominus gladiō ab asperō servō volnerābātur.* 9. *Bonī servī ā dominō laudābuntur.* 10. *Bonus dominus ab amīcō servī miserī laudābitur.*

80. 1. You will be praised, I was being praised, they are advised. 2. Will you be frightened? are we not taught?

why was he praised? 3. We ought to praise the farmer's son. 4. A friend will be loved by a friend. 5. The poor slaves were not freed by the master. 6. In Gaul many fields were devastated by war. 7. Where do you live? I live in America.

CHAPTER XIII

CONJUGATION OF **SUM**: Present, Future, and Imperfect

Predicate: Noun and Adjective

81.

Paradigm

<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
	SINGULAR	
sum , <i>I am</i>	erō , <i>I shall be</i>	eram , <i>I was</i>
es , <i>you are</i>	eris , <i>you will be</i>	erās , <i>you were</i>
est , <i>he is</i>	erit , <i>he will be</i>	erat , <i>he was</i>
	PLURAL	
sumus , <i>we are</i>	erimus , <i>we shall be</i>	erāmus , <i>we were</i>
estis , <i>you are</i>	eritis , <i>you will be</i>	erātis , <i>you were</i>
sunt , <i>they are</i>	erunt , <i>they will be</i>	erant , <i>they were</i>

NOTE. — The stem of **sum** is **es-**; but in some forms the **e** is dropped, and in some forms **s** is changed to **r**.

82. A noun used to explain or identify another noun, or a pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is an *appositive*, as: **Mercurius**, **nūntius deōrum**, *Mercury, the messenger of the gods*.

83. RULE. *An appositive is in the same case as the word it limits.*

84. A noun in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb, and denoting the same person or thing as the subject, is a *predicate* noun, as: **Mercurius erat nūntius**

deōrum, *Mercury was messenger of the gods*; or **Mercurius vocābātur nūntius deōrum**, *Mercury was called the messenger of the gods*.

85. RULE. *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

86. a. An adjective that limits its noun directly is an *attributive* adjective, as: **novus liber**, *a new book*.

b. An adjective that is connected with its noun by a verb is a *predicate* adjective, as: **liber est novus**, *the book is new*.

87. RULE. *A predicate adjective agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.*

88.

VOCABULARY

sum, *esse*, *am*, *be*.

vīcus, -ī, *m.*, *village*.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, *lieutenant*,
deputy, *envoy*, *ambassador*, *legate*.

nūntius, -ī, *m.*, *messenger*.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, *word*.

incendium, -ī, *n.*, *fire*.

contentus, -a, -um, *contented*.

Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, *Marcus*.

Mercurius, -ī, *m.*, *Mercury*.

Vesta, -ae, *f.*, *Vesta*.

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, *Sabinus*.

EXERCISES

89. 1. Es, erās, eris, esse. **2.** Erāmus, sumus, eritis.
3. Est, erat, eritne? **4.** Eram, estis, erimus. **5.** Eritis, sunt, erātisne? **6.** Quis est aeger? Miserī servī sunt aegrī. **7.** Quis nōn audet esse bonus? **8.** Bonī esse dēbēmus. **9.** Librī nōn sunt novī. **10.** In parvō vicō nōn erant multī librī. **11.** Nōnne rēgīna vocābātur pulchra? **12.** Nūntiī Vestae, deae pulchrae, multa dōna portant. **13.** Pulchrī librī sunt dōnum Mārcī, bonī amīcī.

90. 1. You are, they will be, we were, to be. **2.** I was, you will be, are they? **3.** We are, you were, who will be?

4. You are free and ought to be contented. 5. I gave the new books to Marcus, a dear friend. 6. Who was the friend of Marcus? 7. Many towns were destroyed with fire and sword by Sabinus, the lieutenant.

CHAPTER XIV

CONJUGATION OF **SUM**: Perfect, Future Perfect, Pluperfect

Dative of Possessor

91.

Paradigm

<i>Perfect</i>	
SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
<i>fuī, I have been or I was</i>	-ī
<i>fuistī, you have been or you were</i>	-istī
<i>fuit, he has been or he was</i>	-it
PLURAL	
<i>fuimus, we have been or we were</i>	-imus
<i>fuistis, you have been or you were</i>	-istis
<i>fuērunt (-ēre), they have been or they were</i>	-ērunt (-ēre)

<i>Future Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fueram, I had been</i>
<i>fueris, you will have been</i>	<i>fuerās, you had been</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have been</i>	<i>fuerat, he had been</i>
PLURAL	PLURAL
<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>
<i>fueritis, you will have been</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been</i>
<i>fuerint, they will have been</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been</i>

Perfect Infinitive — fuisse, to have been

a. The personal endings of the perfect tense are different from those of all the other tenses, and should be carefully learned. In the third plural the ending *-ēre* is sometimes used instead of *-ērunt*.

b. The stem of the perfect is also different from the stem of the present, and may always be found by dropping the personal ending *-ī* from the first person of the perfect.

c. The pluperfect and future perfect are formed by adding the imperfect *eram*, *erās*, etc., and the future *erō*, *eris*, etc., to the perfect stem. But in the third plural of the future perfect *-erint* occurs instead of *-erunt*.

92.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Puerō est liber, the boy has (to the boy there is) a book.*

2. *Puer librum habet, the boy has a book.*

a. Possession may be expressed in either of these two ways, but for practice it is well, in the exercises, to write both ways till they become familiar.

93. RULE. *The dative may be used with the verb sum to denote the possessor.*

NOTE. — The thing possessed is the subject.

94.

VOCABULARY

<i>Rōmānus</i> , -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .	<i>fugitivus</i> , -ī, m., <i>fugitive, deserter</i> .
<i>Rōmānī</i> , -ōrum, plu., <i>the Romans</i> .	<i>necō</i> , -āre, <i>kill, put to death</i> .
<i>validus</i> , -a, -um, <i>strong</i> .	<i>teneō</i> , -ēre, <i>hold</i> .
<i>iūstus</i> , -a, -um, <i>just, regular</i> .	<i>videō</i> , -ēre, <i>see</i> ; in passive <i>be seen or seem, appear</i> .
<i>incola</i> , -ae, m. and f., <i>inhabitant</i> .	<i>mox</i> , adv., <i>soon</i> .
	<i>nunc</i> , adv., <i>now</i> .

EXERCISES

95. 1. Fuistī, fuerās, fueris. 2. Fuimus, fueritis, fuerint.
 3. Esse, fuisse, quis fuit? 4. Fuerās, fueritis, fuērunt. 5.
 Fueritis, fuerātis, fuistis. 6. Puerō est novus liber, dōnum
 amīcī. 7. Puellae sunt dōna pulchra. 8. Lēgātus fuerat
 amīcus populī Rōmānī. 9. Rōmānī multōs vicōs et oppida
 Galliae dēlēbant. 10. Lātī agrī ā Rōmānis nunc vāstantur.
 11. Incolae erant multī et validī. 12. Validī fuisse videntur.
 13. Fugitīvus ā lēgātō tenētur et mox necābitur.

96. 1. I have been, you will have been, they have been.
 2. We have been, they had been, I shall have been. 3. Have
 they been just? had you not been strong? 4. He seems
 to be strong, they seem to have been strong. 5. We ought
 to be just. 6. Will the lieutenant dare to fight? 7. The
 deserters will be put to death with the sword by the Ro-
 mans. 8. The Romans had strong swords.

CHAPTER XV

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Indicative (*completed*)

Perfect Infinitive

97.

Principal Parts

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERFECT PASSIVE PART.
laudō, <i>I praise</i>	laudāre, <i>to praise</i>	laudāvī, <i>I have praised</i>	laudātus, <i>having been praised,</i> <i>or praised</i>
moneō, <i>I advise</i>	monēre, <i>to advise</i>	monuī, <i>I have advised</i>	monitus, <i>having been advised,</i> <i>or advised</i>

NOTE. — These four forms of the verb are called the *principal parts*, since all other parts of the verb are formed from them.

98. **laudō**: perfect stem **laudāv-**

ACTIVE VOICE	<i>Perfect</i>	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>I have praised, I praised, etc.</i>	<i>I have been praised, I was praised</i>	<i>etc.</i>

SINGULAR

1. laudāvī	laudātus sum
2. laudāvistī	laudātus es
3. laudāvit	laudātus est

PLURAL

1. laudāvimus	laudatī sumus
2. laudāvistis	laudatī estis
3. laudāverunt (-ēre)	laudatī sunt

Future Perfect

<i>I shall have praised, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been praised, etc.</i>
-----------------------------------	--

SINGULAR

1. laudāverō	laudātus erō
2. laudāveris	laudātus eris
3. laudāverit	laudātus erit

PLURAL

1. laudāverimus	laudatī erimus
2. laudāveritis	laudatī eritis
3. laudāverint	laudatī erunt

Pluperfect

<i>I had praised, etc.</i>	<i>I had been praised, etc.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

SINGULAR

1. laudāveram	laudātus eram
2. laudāverās	laudātus erās
3. laudāverat	laudātus erat

PLURAL

1. laudāverāmus	laudatī erāmus
2. laudāverātis	laudatī erātis
3. laudāverant	laudatī erant

99. moneō : perfect stem monu-

ACTIVE VOICE	<i>Perfect</i>	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>I have advised, etc.</i>		<i>I have been advised, etc.</i>
	SINGULAR	
1. monuī		monitus sum
2. monuistī		monitus es
3. monuit		monitus est
	PLURAL	
1. monuimus		monitī sumus
2. monuistis		monitī estis
3. monuērunt (-ēre)		monitī sunt

Future Perfect

<i>I shall have advised, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been advised, etc.</i>
	SINGULAR	
1. monuerō		monitus erō
2. monueris		monitus eris
3. monuerit		monitus erit
	PLURAL	
1. monuerimus		monitī erimus
2. monueritis		monitī eritis
3. monuerint		monitī erunt

Pluperfect

<i>I had advised, etc.</i>		<i>I had been advised, etc.</i>
1. monueram		monitus eram
2. monuerās		monitus erās
3. monuerat		monitus erat
	PLURAL	
1. monuerāmus		monitī erāmus
2. monuerātis		monitī erātis
3. monuerant		monitī erant

ACTIVE VOICE	<i>Perfect Infinitive</i>	PASSIVE VOICE
laudāvisse, <i>to have praised</i>	laudātus esse, <i>to have been praised</i>	
monuisse, <i>to have advised</i>	monitus esse, <i>to have been advised</i>	

a. The perfect participle is inflected like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**, and always agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs in gender, number, and case, like an adjective, as: **laudāta est**, *she has been praised*; **puellae laudatae sunt**, *the girls have been praised*; **servus volnerātus**, *the wounded slave*.

b. The *perfect system* includes the three tenses which are formed from the perfect stem: the *perfect*, *future perfect*, and *pluperfect*, active. The *present system*, for the same reason, includes the three tenses formed from the present stem: the *present*, *future*, and *imperfect*, active and passive.

c. The letters **-eri-** and **-era-** may be considered the tense-signs of the future perfect and pluperfect active. (See 91, *c.*) In the passive the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect are formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **sum**, **ero**, etc.

d. All Latin verbs are inflected alike in the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect.

100. Learn the principal parts of the following verbs, and inflect them in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame*.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give*.

habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus, *have, hold*.

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought*.

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, *teach*.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, ———, *hold*.

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *frighten, scare*.

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, obtentus, *obtain, hold*.

dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *destroy*.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see ; in passive, seem, appear.

a. All regular verbs of the first conjugation have long **a** (**ā**) before **-re** of the present infinitive. The irregular verb **dō, give**, has short **a**, and an irregular stem in the perfect. All the verbs of the first conjugation, which have been thus far used, form their principal parts regularly, like **laudō**, and so are not repeated here.

b. Verbs of the second conjugation have long **e** (**ē**) before the **-re** of the present infinitive.

c. The perfect stems and the participles of different verbs vary considerably, and must be learned for each verb from the principal parts as given in the vocabulary.

d. The stem of the perfect of all verbs is found by dropping the personal ending **-ī** from the perfect as given in the principal parts.

EXERCISES

101. 1. Culpāvī, dedī, docueram, mōverō. 2. Culpātus erō, laudātī erant, vīsi estis. 3. Doctī erāmus, dedistī, cūr territī sunt? 4. Dedit, viderāmus, puella docta est. 5. Multa oppida incendiō dēlēta esse videntur. 6. Rōmānī castra mōvisse vidēbantur. 7. Rēgnum ōlim ā tyrannō obtentum erat. 8. I.ēgātus, sagittā volnerātus,¹ aeger erat. 9. Multī agrī Galliae, ā Rōmānīs occupātī,¹ incendiō vāstātī sunt. 10. Incolae dēlēti¹ oppidī territī esse vidēbantur. 11. Dēbentne oppida bellō dēlēri?

102. 1. I have praised, you had warned, he will have been frightened. 2. We have been praised, you had been taught, they will have been seen. 3. A great number of beautiful books has been given to the sick boy. 4. Victory

had been announced to the Roman people by a messenger.
 5. A large town, seized¹ by the lieutenant, seems to have been destroyed by fire. 6. Ought the frightened¹ inhabitants to be blamed?

CHAPTER XVI

THIRD CONJUGATION: REGŌ

103.

*Paradigm***regō, rule**Principal parts : **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

*I rule, etc.**Present**I am ruled, etc.*

1. regō	regimus
2. regis	regitis
3. regit	regunt

regor	regimur
regeris (-re)	regimini
regitur	reguntur

*I shall rule, etc.**Future**I shall be ruled, etc.*

1. regam	regēmus
2. regēs	regētis
3. reget	regent

regar	regēmur
regēris (-re)	regēmini
regētur	regentur

*I was ruling, etc.**Imperfect**I was ruled, etc.*

1. regēbam	regēbāmus
2. regēbās	regēbātis
3. regēbat	regēbant

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris (-re)	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

a. The personal endings (70) of all conjugations are the same, but the vowel before the endings varies. Accordingly verbs

are divided into four regular conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before *-re* of the present infinitive active (cf. 100, *a, b*), thus:

CONJUGATION	PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE	CHARACTERISTIC VOWEL	STEM
I	<i>laudāre, to praise</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>laudā-</i>
II	<i>monēre, to advise</i>	<i>ē</i>	<i>monē-</i>
III	<i>regere, to rule</i>	<i>ē</i>	<i>rege-</i>
IV	<i>audīre, to hear</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>audī-</i>

b. The stem-vowel, short *e*, which is characteristic of the third conjugation, changes in some forms of the present to *i* or *u*.

c. The tense-sign of the future indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is *-ē-* (*-a-* in 1st person) instead of *-bi-* (70, *c*).

d. The infinitive passive of the third conjugation may be formed from the infinitive active by putting *-ī* in the place of the ending *-ere*, as: *regere, to rule*; *regī, to be ruled*. Cf. 75, *c*.

104.

VOCABULARY

pīlum, *-ī*, n., *javelin*.

socius, *-ī*, m., *ally, associate*.

statim, adv., *at once, immediately*.

sed, conj., *but*.

tum, adv., *then, at that time*.

appellō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*,
call.

dēfendō, *-ere*, *dēfendī*, *dē-*
fēnsus, *defend*.

mittō, *-ere*, *mīsī*, *missus*,
send.

superō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*,
surpass, defeat.

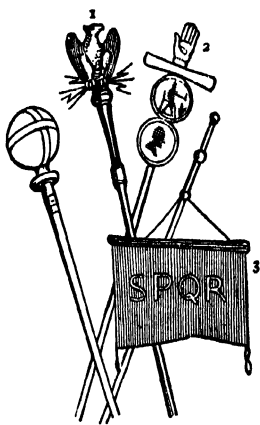
vincō, *-ere*, *vīcī*, *victus*,
conquer.

EXERCISES

105. 1. *Regit, regēs, mittēbātis, mittere*. 2. *Regimur, vincēmus, vincēbantur, dēfendēminī*. 3. *Superābis, mittēs, mittēris, appellāre*. 4. *Vincēbās, vinceris, dēfendēmur, mittēbāminī*. 5. *Vincitur, vincent, vincere, vīcī, appellāre*.

6. Socii populi Rōmānī ōlim appellābantur amici. 7. Socii tum crant validi sed ā Rōmānis superābantur. 8. Nunc auxilium rogant et auxilium statim mittētur. 9. Amici populi Rōmānī dēfenduntur. 10. Multa oppida et magni agri tum vāstābantur. 11. Rōmāni vicōs et oppida pilis et gladiis dēfendere videntur.

106. 1. He will be, he will praise, he will teach, he will send. 2. They will be, they will be praised, they will be taught, they will not be sent. 3. We shall be, we shall be praised, we shall not send help. 4. You will be, you will conquer, you will be defended. 5. To conquer, to be conquered, who will conquer? 6. Will help be sent by the allies? 7. Who was called just?



SIGNA ROMANA

1. Aquila

2. Signum

3. Vexillum

CHAPTER XVII

THIRD CONJUGATION: -iō Verbs

107.

*Paradigm***capiō**, *take, seize*Principal parts : **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

*Present**I take, etc.**I am taken, etc.*

1. capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
2. capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capimini
3. capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

*Future**I shall take, etc.**I shall be taken, etc.*

1. capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
2. capies	capietis	capieris (-re)	capiemini
3. capiet	capient	capientur	capientur

*Imperfect**I was taking, etc.**I was taken, etc.*

1. capiebam	capiebamus	capiebar	capiebamur
2. capiebās	capiebātis	capiebāris (-re)	capiebāmini
3. capiebat	capiebant	capiebātur	capiebantur

a. **Capiō** is a regular verb of the third conjugation like **regō** (103); but in the present, first person singular and third person plural, and all through the imperfect and future, the vowel **i** is added to the verb-stem.

b. In the third conjugation, verbs which end in **-iō** are conjugated like **capiō**; others like **regō**.

108.

VOCABULARY

grātia, -ae, f., *favour*
 proelium, -ī, n., *battle*.
 tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon*.
 itaque, conj., *and so, there-
 fore*.
 oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
attack, besiege.
 recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *re-
 fuse, reject*.

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw,
 hurl*.
 faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do,
 make*.
 cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,
finish, complete, wear out.
 interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,
kill.
 fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus,¹
flee.

EXERCISES

109. 1. Capit, regēs, capiēs, regēbātis, fugiēbātis. 2. Recūsābimus, capiēbāmur, capiuntur. 3. Regēmur, capiēmur, capiēbātis. 4. Regeris, regēris, docēberis, cūr recūsābis? 5. Dēfendere, dēfendī, iacere, iaci, oppugnāre, oppugnārī. 6. Jūstus vir grātiā amicī nōn recūsābit sed amicō grātiā faciet. 7. Virī pila iaciunt, tēla iaciuntur. 8. Fugitivī mox ā lēgātō capientur et interficientur. 9. Multa oppida oppugnābantur, itaque incolae proelium nōn recūsābant. 10. Multī virī nunc in proeliō interficiuntur sed bellum mox cōficiētur.

110. 1. You take, you are taken, we shall take, we shall not be taken. 2. You will rule, we are not being conquered, they will soon be worn out by war. 3. Who will not do a favour for a friend? 4. The favour of a friend will not be rejected by a friend. 5. They are making war, weapons are thrown, many men are being killed in battle,

¹ In the principal parts of intransitive verbs, which can have no passive voice (76, a), and therefore no perfect passive participle, the future active participle, made from the same stem but ending in -ūrus, is given.

the inhabitants are fleeing.¹ 6. The town, having been attacked by the Romans, will soon be taken and destroyed by fire.

CHAPTER XVIII

REGŌ AND CAPIŌ: Indicative (*completed*)

III.

Paradigm

<i>Perfect</i>			
ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>I have ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I have been ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I have taken, etc.</i>	<i>I have been taken, etc.</i>
1. rēxī	rēctus sum	cēpī	captus sum
2. rēxistī	rēctus es	cēpistī	captus es
3. rēxit	rēctus est	cēpit	captus est
1. rēximus	rēctī sumus	cēpimus	captī sumus
2. rēxistis	rēctī estis	cēpistis	captī estis
3. rēxērunt (-ēre)	rēctī sunt	cēpērunt (-ēre)	captī sunt

<i>Future Perfect</i>			
<i>I shall have ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have taken, etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been taken, etc.</i>
1. rēxerō	rēctus erō	cēperō	captus erō
2. rēxeris	rēctus eris	cēperis	captus eris
3. rēxerit	rēctus erit	cēperit	captus erit
1. rēxerimus	rēctī erimus	cēperimus	captī erimus
2. rēxeritis	rēctī eritis	cēperitis	captī eritis
3. rēxerint	rēctī erunt	cēperint	captī erunt

¹ See 75, d.

<i>Pluperfect</i>			
ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>I had ruled,</i> etc.	<i>I had been</i> <i>ruled, etc.</i>	<i>I had taken,</i> etc.	<i>I had been</i> <i>taken, etc.</i>
1. <i>rēxeram</i>	<i>rēctus eram</i>	<i>cēperam</i>	<i>captus eram</i>
2. <i>rēxerās</i>	<i>rēctus erās</i>	<i>cēperās</i>	<i>captus erās</i>
3. <i>rēxerat</i>	<i>rēctus erat</i>	<i>cēperat</i>	<i>captus erat</i>
1. <i>rēxerāmus</i>	<i>rēctī erāmus</i>	<i>cēperāmus</i>	<i>captī erāmus</i>
2. <i>rēxerātis</i>	<i>rēctī erātis</i>	<i>cēperātis</i>	<i>captī erātis</i>
3. <i>rēxerant</i>	<i>rēctī erant</i>	<i>cēperant</i>	<i>captī erant</i>
<i>Perfect Infinitive</i>			
<i>rēxisse, to have ruled</i>	<i>rēctus esse, to have been ruled</i>		
<i>cēpisse, to have taken</i>	<i>captus esse, to have been taken</i>		

112.

VOCABULARY

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*

Gallī, -ōrum, plu., m., *the Gauls.*

Germānus, -a, -um, *German.*

Germānī, -ōrum, plu., m., *the Germans.*

Haeduī, -ōrum, plu., m., *the Haedui.*

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*

etiam, adv., *even.*

adrogantia, -ae, f., *arrogance.*

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *contend, strive, hasten, hurry on.*

incendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *burn, set fire to.*

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmp-tus, *assume, take, spend.*

a. Some Latin proper nouns have English equivalents, as : **Germānī**, *Germans* ; **Gallī**, *Gauls*. For many there are no modern equivalents, as : **Rēmī**, **Labiēnus**. The nominative forms of such words are used in English without change. In translating, accent such words according to the Latin rules, but give the letters the English sound.

b. Hereafter proper nouns which are to be used in English without change of form will not be given in the vocabularies.

EXERCISES

113. 1. Rēxistī, cēpērunt, pīla iēcērās. 2. Rēctus eris, captī eritis, tēla capta erant. 3. Rēxerās, captus eris, sagittae iactae sunt. 4. Rēximus, volnerāti erāmus, nūntiī missi sunt. 5. Sagittās iēcisse videntur, sagittae iactae esse videntur. 6. Helvētiī lātōs agrōs nōn habēbant. 7. Itaque agrōs Haeduōrum occupābant. 8. Sed Haeduī, ab Helvētiīs superāti, auxilium rogāvērunt. 9. Auxilium statim ā Rōmānīs missum est. 10. In bellō Helvētiī multa oppida et vicōs incenderant.

114. 1. You have ruled, you had conquered, you will have contended. 2. We have ruled, they had been sent, he will have been conquered. 3. To praise, to be praised, to take, to be taken, to have conquered, to have been conquered. 4. Ariovistus had been called friend by the Roman people. 5. But he conquered the Gauls in many battles. 6. And so he had assumed great arrogance, and even dared to make war.

CHAPTER XIX

REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS

115. *a.* Review the inflection of the Indicative, both voices, and the present and perfect Infinitive of the model verbs **laudō** (473), **moneō** (476), **regō** (477), **capiō** (478), and **sum** (81, 91). *

b. Review the principal parts of the verbs given in 100, 104, 108, 112. These verbs may then be conjugated like the model verbs. See 100, *a.*

c. Write out the list of personal endings of the perfect active

(91) ; of the other tenses in the active (70) and the passive (74). What is the tense-sign of the imperfect (70, *b*)? of the future in the first and second conjugations (70, *c*)? in the third conjugation (103, *c*)? How may the stem of the perfect always be found (100, *d*)? What is the tense-sign of the pluperfect (99, *c*)? of the future perfect? What is the characteristic vowel of each of the first three conjugations (103, *a*)?

EXERCISES

116. 1. Es, esse, regī, fuisse, laudāvisse, capī. 2. Eris, fueritis, erunt, fuisti, fuerāmus, dominō erant nigrī equī. 3. Laudārī, laudāminī, laudābitis, laudāberis, laudāvisti, laudāverat, puerī laudāti erant. 4. Monēbis, monēbimur, monēberis, monēmur, monuistis, monueritis, puellae monitae erunt. 5. Regitis, regeris, regēris, rēximus, rēxeritis, rēctī erāmus. 6. Capīt, caperīs, capiēris, cēperit, capientur. 7. Oppida capta sunt, oppidum captum esse vidētur. 8. Libērōs monēre dēbēmus, liberī monērī dēbent. 9. Laudāris, capiēminī, rēctī eritis, monēminī, rēxeris. 10. Estis, monuimus, laudābiminī, monentur, oppida capiēbantur.

117. 1. To be taken, to have ruled, you will be ruled, they are advised. 2. You have been, you have taken, they will be taken, I shall have been warned. 3. You will be, they will be praised, the girls have been warned. 4. You will rule, they were being praised, you ought to be praised. 5. The town seems to have been captured, the inhabitants are now being captured. 6. The poor slave does not have new books. 7. Marcus, the farmer's son, will be a sailor.



PILUM

CHAPTER XX

THIRD DECLENSION: Mute Stems

Ablative of Manner, etc.

118.

Paradigm

Stem and Root	rēx, m., <i>king</i>	mīles, m., <i>soldier</i>	prīnceps, m., <i>chief</i>	
	rēg-	milit-	prīncip-	
SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS MAS. AND FEM.
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	mīles	prīnceps	-s
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	mīlitem	prīncipem	-em
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	mīlitis	prīncipis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	mīlitī	prīncipī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	mīlite	prīncipe	-e
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	-ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	mīlitum	prīncipum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	-ibus
caput, n., head. Stem and root, capit-				
	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	caput	—	capita	-a
<i>Acc.</i>	caput	—	capita	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	capitis	-is	capitum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	capitī	-ī	capitibus	-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	capite	-e	capitibus	-ibus

a. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or i. In consonant stems, which have no characteristic

stem-vowel (22, *b*), the stem and root are the same and are found by dropping *-is* from the genitive singular, and the different cases are formed by adding the terminations to this stem.

b. In the nominative singular the last vowel of the stem is often changed as seen above in *mīles*, *prīnceps*, and *caput*.

c. The consonant *c* or *g* before *s* unites with the *s* and forms *x*, as: *dux*, *ducis* (stem *duc-*), and *rēx*, *rēgis* (stem *rēg-*); while *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*, as in *lapis*, *lapidis* (stem *lapid-*); *virtūs*, *virtūtis* (stem *virtūt-*).

d. Decline together *bonus mīles*, *magna virtūs*, *magnum caput*.

119. RULE. *The ablative with cum is used to denote manner, as: cum diligentiā labōrant, they toil with diligence, or diligently.*

a. But the preposition may be omitted if the ablative is modified by an adjective, as: *magnā diligentiā labōrant, they toil with great diligence.*

120. RULE. *The ablative with cum is used to denote accompaniment, as: lēgātum cum mīlitibus mittit, he sends the lieutenant with the soldiers.*

a. The preposition is rarely omitted.

NOTE. — The ablative with *cum* is also used with verbs of *association* and *contention*, as: *cum Germānīs contendunt, they contend with the Germans*; and *cum Catulō habitat, he lives with Catulus*.

121.

VOCABULARY

<i>dux</i> , <i>ducis</i> , m., <i>leader</i> .	<i>obses</i> , <i>-idis</i> , m., <i>hostage</i> .
<i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> , f., <i>peace</i> .	<i>salūs</i> , <i>-ūtis</i> , f., <i>safety</i> .
<i>lapis</i> , <i>-idis</i> , m., <i>stone</i> .	<i>virtūs</i> , <i>-ūtis</i> , f., <i>bravery, courage, virtue</i> .
<i>custōs</i> , <i>-ōdis</i> , m. or f., <i>guard, guardian, keeper</i> .	<i>fuga</i> , <i>-ae</i> , f., <i>flight</i> .
<i>pēs</i> , <i>pedis</i> , m., <i>foot</i> .	<i>diligentia</i> , <i>-ae</i> , f., <i>diligence, care</i> .
<i>pedes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , m., <i>foot-soldier</i> ;	<i>studium</i> , <i>-i</i> , n., <i>zeal, desire</i> .
<i>plu.</i> , <i>infantry</i> .	<i>petō</i> , <i>-ere</i> , <i>-īvi</i> or <i>-iī</i> , <i>-itus</i> ,
<i>eques</i> , <i>-itis</i> , m., <i>horseman</i> ;	<i>seek, beg</i> .
<i>plu.</i> , <i>cavalry</i> .	

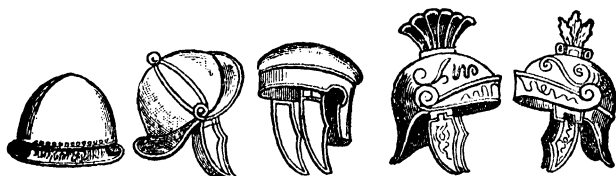
EXERCISES

122. 1. Fugā equitum territi, etiam socii salūtem fugā petunt. 2. Cēpistisne tēla, militēs?¹ Galli lapidēs et pila iaciunt. 3. Miser miles, in proeliō volnerātus, est aeger. 4. In castris fuit magnus numerus militum volnerātōrum. 5. Pācem cum principibus Galliae faciunt. 6. Dux Crasum, lēgātum, cum multis equitibus misit. 7. Multi militēs lapidibus et pilis volnerābantur. 8. Pedēs miserī peditis asperis lapidibus volnerāti erant. 9. Ubī, ab equitibus Suēvōrum superāti, pācem petēbant. 10. Lēgātōs miserant et Germānis obsidēs dabant.

123. 1. Of a good soldier, of great courage, of good kings. 2. We see the heads of the leaders, we praise the courage of the soldiers. 3. The soldiers fought with zeal and courage. 4. The town was saved by the zeal² and courage of the leader. 5. Sabinus, the lieutenant, had been sent with a large number of horsemen. 6. The guards were defending the camp with care. 7. By the vigilance of the guards the camp was saved.

¹ 47.² 48.

EQUUS



GALEAE

CHAPTER XXI

THIRD DECLENSION: Liquid Stems

124.

Paradigm

Stem and Root }	cōnsul, m., <i>consul</i>	legiō, f., <i>legion</i>	homō, m. or f., <i>man, person</i>	pater, m., <i>father</i>
	cōnsul-	legiōn-	homin-	patr-
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	legiō	homō	pater
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsule m	legiōn em	homin em	patr em
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsul is	legiōn is	homin is	patr is
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsul ī	legiōn ī	homin ī	patr ī
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsul e	legiōn e	homin e	patr e
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul ēs	legiōn ēs	homin ēs	patr ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsul ēs	legiōn ēs	homin ēs	patr ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsul um	legiōn um	homin um	patr um
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsul ibus	legiōn ibus	homin ibus	patr ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsul ibus	legiōn ibus	homin ibus	patr ibus

α. Decline together **magnus labor, magna multitūdō**.

125.

Neuters

Stem and Root }	nōmen, n., <i>name</i>	genus, n., <i>race</i>	corpus, n., <i>body</i>	iter, n., <i>road</i>
	nōmin-	gener-	corpor-	itiner-
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminis	generis	corporis	itineris
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminī	generī	corporī	itinerī
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmine	genere	corpore	itinere
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	nōmina	genera	corpora	itineria
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmina	genera	corpora	itineria
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminum	generum	corporum	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus
<i>Abl.</i>	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus

a. Decline together **magnum iter** and **flūmen longum**.

126.

VOCABULARY

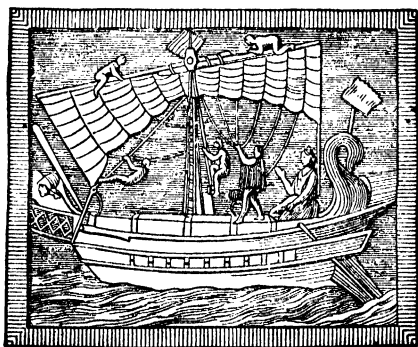
ad , prep. with acc., <i>to, toward, near.</i>	iter, itineris , n., <i>road, route, march.</i>
flōs, -ōris , m., <i>flower.</i>	labor, ōris , m., <i>labour, work.</i>
flūmen, -inis , n., <i>river.</i>	māter, -tris , f., <i>mother.</i>
frāter, -tris , m., <i>brother. [kind.</i>	multitūdō, -inis , f., <i>multi-</i>
genus, -eris , n., <i>race, class,</i>	<i>tude, great number.</i>
patria, -ae , f., <i>country.</i>	semper , adv., <i>always, ever.</i>
	coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus , <i>hurl, throw.</i>
	intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus , <i>know, understand.</i>

EXERCISES

127. 1. Nōmina rēgum, capita equōrum, pedēs hominum. 2. Cōsul multis cum legiōnibus peditum iter faciēbat. 3. Filiis et filiābus rēgis sunt pulchri equi. 4. Liberī boni ā patribus et mātribus semper amantur. 5. Multi agrī et vicī ā rēgis militibus incendiō vāstābantur. 6. Castici¹ pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs¹ obtinēbat. 7. Nōnne magnum numerum equitum peditumque ad flūmen vidēs? 8. Militēs multitudinem lapidum et pilōrum coniciēbant. 9. Multi hominēs lapidibus et pilis militum vulnerāti sunt.

128. 1. We see the large horses and good horsemen. 2. The large bodies and great courage of the Germans frightened the Roman soldiers. 3. The soldiers will make the long march with great danger. 4. Do you know the names and kinds of flowers? 5. With great zeal the farmer's son is working in the field with father and brother. 6. The Roman legions will defend the name and safety of their country by bravery.

¹ 112 a, b.



NAVIS ET NAUTAE

CHAPTER XXII

THIRD DECLENSION: i-Stems

Genitive of Quality

129.

Paradigm

	hostis, m., <i>enemy</i>	turris, f., <i>tower</i>	vīs, f., <i>force, plu., strength</i>	imber, m., <i>rain</i>	
Stem:	hosti-	turri-	vī-, vīri-	imbri-	
Root:	host-	turr-	vī-, vīr-	imbr-	
SINGULAR					TERMINATIONS
Nom.	hostis	turris	vīs	imber	-is
Acc.	hostem	turrim, -em	vim	imbrem	-em, -im
Gen.	hostis	turris	(vīs)	imbris	-is
Dat.	hostī	turrī	(vī)	imbrī	-ī
Abl.	hoste	turrī, -e	vī	imbrī, -e	-ī, -e
PLURAL					
Nom.	hostēs	turrēs	vīrēs	imbrēs	-ēs
Acc.	hostīs, -ēs	turrīs, -ēs	vīrīs, -ēs	imbrīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
Gen.	hostium	turrium	vīrium	imbrium	-ium
Dat.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus
Abl.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus

130. Pure i-stems include :

1. Parisyllabic¹ nouns in -is and four in -er.²
2. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

¹ A parisyllabic noun is one whose genitive case has the same number of syllables as the nominative.

² imber, linter, uter, venter.

131.

Neuters

	mare , n., <i>sea</i>	animal , n., <i>animal</i>	calcar , n., <i>spur</i>	
Stem:	mari-	animāli-	calcāri-	
Root:	mar-	animāl-	calcār-	
	SINGULAR			CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	mare	animal	calcar	—
<i>Acc.</i>	mare	animal	calcar	—
<i>Gen.</i>	maris	animālis	calcāris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Acc.</i>	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	marium ¹	animālium	calcārium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	maribus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	maribus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus

132. *a.* Nouns with *i*-stems have **-ium** in the genitive plural.

b. All neuters have the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia**.

c. The accusative plural, masculine and feminine, ends in **-īs** or **-ēs**.

d. The accusative singular of a few words ends in **-im**, as: **turris**, *tower*, acc. **turrim**.

e. The ablative singular of neuters ends in **-ī**; also a few nouns of the other genders sometimes have the ablative singular in **-ī**, as: **avis**, **cīvis**, **fīnis**, **ignis**, **nāvis**, **turris**.

¹ The genitive plural of **mare** is sometimes written **marum**.

133.

VOCABULARY

collis, -is, m., *hill*.excursiō, -ōnis, f., *raid*.iūmentum, -ī, n., *pack-animal*.onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight*.altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*.crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, repeated*.atque, or ac, conj., *and*.ex, or ē, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.locō or conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *place, station*.cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *consume*.cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *erect, station, arrange, determine*.

NOTE.—The forms **atque** and **ex** are used before vowels or **h**, and sometimes before consonants; **ac** and **ē**, the shortened forms of **atque** and **ex**, are used only before consonants. Compare 76, c.

EXERCISES

134. 1. In agrīs sunt multa genera flōrum. 2. Multa animālia altō in marī habitant. 3. Quis cōstituit altam turrīm in colle? 4. Rōmānī erant virī magnae virtūtis.¹ 5. Magnis viribus turrīs magnī oneris¹ in mūrō conlocābant. 6. In bellō Helvētīi multa iūmenta habēbant. 7. Multum frūmentum ā magnā multitudine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbātur. 8. Equitēs crēbrās excursiōnēs ex oppidō faciēbant. 9. Haeduī Ariovistō ac Sēquanīs obsidēs dederant. 10. Galli virtūte ac studiō equitum Rōmānōrum terrēbantur.

135. 1. The deep seas are inhabited by many kinds of animals. 2. Near the river was a high hill. 3. Foot-soldiers were stationed on the hill by the leader. 4. Cæsar praised the courage and zeal of the soldiers. 5. Much grain will be destroyed by the frequent raids of the cavalry.

¹ The words **magnae virtūtis** together in 4 express the

quality of the Romans, and **magnī oneris** in 5 describe the towers. Such a use of the genitive with an adjective is called the *descriptive genitive* or *genitive of quality*.

136. RULE. *A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the genitive to denote quality.*

CHAPTER XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION: Mixed i-Stems

Ablative of Cause

137. Nouns with mixed i-stems are declined in the singular like nouns with consonant stems; in the plural like nouns with i-stems, thus:

Paradigm

	caedēs, f., <i>slaughter</i>	arx, f., <i>citadel</i>	cliēns, m., <i>client</i>	cīvitās, f., <i>state</i>
Variable Stem:	caed (i)-	arc (i)-	client (i)-	cīvitāt (i)-
Root:	caed-	arc-	client-	cīvitāt-
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	arx	cliēns	cīvitās
<i>Acc.</i>	caedem	arcem	clientem	cīvitātem
<i>Gen.</i>	caedis	arcis	clientis	cīvitātis
<i>Dat.</i>	caedī	arcī	clientī	cīvitātī
<i>Abl.</i>	caede	arce	cliente	cīvitāte
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	arcēs	clientēs	cīvitātēs
<i>Acc.</i>	caedis, -ēs	arcis, -ēs	clientis, -ēs	cīvitātis, -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedum	arcium	clientium	cīvitātum (-ium)
<i>Dat.</i>	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus
<i>Abl.</i>	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus

138. Mixed i-stems include :

1. Parisyllabic nouns in -ēs.
2. Monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by a consonant, as : pōns, arx, etc.
3. Nouns in -ns and -rs, as : cliēns, cohors, etc.
4. Nouns in -tās.

NOTE. — Nouns in -tās generally have -um instead of -ium in the genitive plural.

139. Gender in the Third Declension

1. Most nouns in -ēs which increase in the genitive, also nouns in -er, -or, and -ōs, are masculine.

2. Nouns in -ēs which do not increase in the genitive, also nouns in -ō, -ās, -is, -ūs (gen. -ūtis or -ūdis), -x, and those in -s preceded by a consonant, are feminine.

3. Nouns in -a, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ūs (gen. -oris or -eris), are neuter.

NOTE. — Many exceptions to these rules will be found. But these are best learned from practice. Of course all nouns denoting males are masculine and those denoting females are feminine, whatever the ending may be (19, a).

140. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Custōdēs vigilantīā laudātī sunt.

The guards were praised for their vigilance.

a. In this sentence vigilantīā denotes the cause or reason why the guards were praised, and may be translated *because of*, *by reason of*, *on account of*, *for*, etc.

141. RULE. *Cause is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

142.

VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, m., <i>year</i> .	magnitūdō, -inis, f., <i>greatness, size</i> .
celeritās, -ātis, f., <i>swift-ness</i> .	opus, -eris, n., <i>work</i> .
comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>get together, procure</i> .	permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, <i>move greatly, trouble</i> .
finitimus, -a, -um, <i>neighbouring, near; plu., neighbours</i> .	pondus, -eris, n., <i>weight</i> .
hiberna, -ōrum, plu., n., <i>winter quarters</i> .	saxum, -ī, n., <i>rock</i> .
	tempus, -oris, n., <i>time</i> .
	urbs, -is, f., <i>city</i> .

EXERCISES

143. 1. Arx in altō colle conlocāta est. 2. Custōdēs arcem virtūte dēfendent. 3. Saxa magnī ponderis in mūrō conlocāta erant. 4. Hostēs magnitūdine operis et celeritātē¹ Rōmānōrum permōtī sunt. 5. Caesar magnum equitum numerum ex finitimis civitatibus comparāvit. 6. Dux cum cōpiis² equitum magnā celeritātē³ iter faciēbat. 7. Custōdēs arcis ā rēgis militibus interficiēbantur. 8. Nūntius duci caedem custōdum nūntiāvit. 9. Militēs urbem etiam incendere audēbant. 10. Annī tempore¹ atque imbribus legiōnēs in Senonibus⁴ in hibernis conlocābantur.

144. 1. The neighbouring states will send deputies. 2. Deputies of great vigilance will be sent by many states. 3. We praise the work and labour of the soldiers. 4. The leaders ought to be praised for their courage.¹ 5. We will always seek the peace and safety of the state. 6. The Helvetii made war with the neighbouring states with great zeal.

¹ 141.² 120.³ 119, a.

⁴ The ending **-ibus** shows that this word is of the third declension, and the nominative plural must therefore be **Senonēs**. See 112, a, b.

CHAPTER XXIV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Adjectives of One Termination

145. *a. prūdēns, wise, sagacious*; stem, *prūdenti-*; root, *prudent-*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentia</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>prudentem</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prudentēs, -īs</i>	<i>prudentia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>prudentis</i>	<i>prudentis</i>	<i>prudentium</i>	<i>prudentium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>prudentī</i>	<i>prudentī</i>	<i>prudentibus</i>	<i>prudentibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>prudentī</i>	<i>prudentī</i>	<i>prudentibus</i>	<i>prudentibus</i>

b. audāx, bold: stem, *audāci-*; root, *audāc-*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs, -īs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>

c. vetus, old: stem and root, *veter-*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vetere</i>	<i>vetere</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

Adjectives of Two Terminations

146. *omnis, all*: stem, *omni-*; root, *omn-*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Acc.</i>	omnem	omne	omnēs, -īs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Abl.</i>	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

Adjectives of Three Terminations

147. *ācer, cager, active, spirited*: stem, *ācri-*; root, *ācr-*

	SINGULAR		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. In all cases, except the nominative and accusative, all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders.

b. Most adjectives of the third declension ending in *-er* have three terminations in the nominative singular like *ācer*, those in *-is* two like *omnis*, all others only one.

c. All adjectives of the third declension with three terminations like *ācer*, or with two terminations like *omnis*, have *i*-stems, and always have *ī* in the ablative singular.

d. Adjectives of one termination, except *vetus* and a very few others, also have *ī*-stems, and end in *ī* (rarely *e*) in the ablative.

NOTE — Adjectives, though they must always agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns which they limit, often belong to a different declension.

148. Decline together *fortis dux*, *breve tempus*, *ācer equus*, *triste bellum*, *bonus miles*, *pulchra urbs*.

149.

VOCABULARY

<i>angustus</i> , -a, -um, <i>narrow</i> .	<i>fortis</i> , -e, <i>brave</i> .
<i>brevis</i> , -e, <i>short</i> .	<i>gravis</i> , -e, <i>heavy, severe</i> .
<i>celer</i> , -eris, -ere, <i>swift, quick, rapid</i> .	<i>imperātor</i> , -ōris, m., <i>commander</i> .
<i>Cicerō</i> , -ōnis, m., <i>Cicero</i> .	<i>redūcō</i> , -ere, <i>dūxī</i> , -ductus, <i>lead back</i> .
<i>cōsul</i> , -is, m., <i>consul</i> .	<i>Rhēnus</i> , -ī, m., <i>the Rhine</i> .
<i>dūcō</i> , -ere, <i>dūxī</i> , ductus, <i>lead, draw</i> .	<i>trādūcō</i> , -ere, - <i>dūxī</i> , -ductus, <i>lead across</i> .
<i>ēdūcō</i> , -ere, - <i>dūxī</i> , -ductus, <i>lead out</i> .	<i>trāns</i> , prep. with acc., <i>across, on the other side of</i> .

EXERCISES

150. 1. Onera fortium militum sunt gravia. 2. Dux ācer ad finitimam civitatem cum omnibus cōpiis contendit. 3. Nōnne incolae oppidi erant audācēs et validi? 4. Quis pulchram urbem prūdenti cōsiliō servāvit? Urbs ā Cicerōne, cōsule, servāta est. 5. Veterēs cōpiac hostium ā fortī duce dūcēbantur. 6. Audācēs equitēs salūtem celerī fugā petiērunt. 7. Ex castris ācris cōpiās ēdūxit et legiōnēs
L in colle cōstituit. 8. Sed mox fortēs militēs ad castra re-

dūcentur. 9. Ariovistus multitudinem audācium hominum trāns flūmen Rhēnum trādūxit. 10. Novus imperātor cum veteribus hostium cōpiis contendere audēbat.

151. 1. The road was short and narrow. 2. All the inhabitants of the city were brave. 3. A bold horseman loves a spirited horse. 4. The brave leader was praised by all the soldiers. 5. Many legions of veteran troops had been stationed on the other side of the river. 6. The neighbours were frightened by the frequent and rapid raids of the cavalry.

CHAPTER XXV

REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Reading Lesson

152. Review the paradigms given in 118, 124, 125, 129, 131, 137. Write out the list of terminations of nouns of the third declension with consonant stems as given in 118. Give the rules for i-stems (130, 138), and write the list of terminations, masculine and feminine (129), neuter (131). How do these terminations differ from those of nouns with consonant stems? Give the rules of gender for nouns of the third declension (139).

153. Decline the following nouns, taken from vocabularies 121, 126, 133, 142, giving the stem, gender, and meaning :

dux	eques	labor	excursiō
pāx	virtūs	flōs	urbs
lapis	salūs	flūmen	pondus
custōs	multitūdō	collis	celeritās
pēs	māter	obses	tempus
pedes	frāter	onus	opus

154.

DEMOSTHENES THE ORATOR

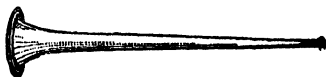
Dēmostenēs¹ fuit ōrātōrum princeps. Nātūrā bonam vōcem nōn habuit. Verba nōn rēctē prōnūntiābat. Itaque magnō labōre ac studiō impedimentum vōcis superāre cōstituit. Parvōs lapidēs in ōre locāvit et in maris litore multās ōrātiōnēs prōnūntiāvit. Magnā diligentiā omnia impedimenta vicit. Tum apud multitudinem hominum ōrātiōnēs habēre² audēbat. Clāmōre populī excitāti nōn permōtus est. Ēloquentiā populum ad bellum contrā Philippum, rēgem Macedoniae,¹ excitāvit et patriam servāvit.

155.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

apud, prep. with acc., <i>in the presence of.</i>	nātūra, -ae, f., <i>nature.</i>
clāmōr, -ōris, m., <i>shout, clamour.</i>	ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., <i>oration, speech.</i>
contrā, prep. with acc., <i>against.</i>	ōrātor, -ōris, m., <i>orator.</i>
ēloquentiā, -ae, f., <i>eloquence.</i>	ōs, ōris, n., <i>mouth.</i>
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>excite, arouse.</i>	patria, -ae, f., <i>country, native land.</i>
impedimentum, -ī, n., <i>impediment.</i>	Philippus, -ī, <i>Philip.</i>
lītus, -oris, n., <i>shore.</i>	prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>pronounce, utter, deliver.</i>
	rēctē, adv., <i>correctly.</i>
	vōx, vōcis, f., <i>voice, speech.</i>

¹ 112, b. ² habēre with ōrātiōnem = *deliver an oration, or make a speech.*



TUBA

CHAPTER XXVI

READING LESSON WITH INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR

Ablative of Specification

NOTE. — The meaning of the reading lessons and of many of the sentences in the various exercises that follow will be plainer to the pupils if they study the following :

156. INTRODUCTION TO THE READING LESSONS

During the period of conquest and expansion the Romans used to annex all conquered territory as provinces. It was customary for the consuls and prætors to have their power extended for the year after their term of office. Under the title of proconsul or proprætor they were sent to govern these provinces. In B. C. 58, Cæsar, who had been consul the year before, took command of the province of Gaul. This consisted of the valley of the Padus (Po) and of the southern portion of what we call France.

Ancient Gaul comprised for the most part the territory now occupied by France, Holland, and Belgium. The Helvetii, one of the bravest tribes of Gaul, occupied what is now Switzerland. On the other side of the Rhine were the Germans. About the time when Cæsar took command of Gaul, a large number of Germans crossed the Rhine and were about to dispossess the Gauls of their land. The Helvetii also, hemmed in by too narrow limits, were just preparing to migrate to the west in search of more spacious dwelling-places.

The territory of the Hædui, one of the most powerful Gallic tribes, who were friends of the Romans, was especially threatened. So they appealed to Cæsar for help. Thus Cæsar was brought into war with the Helvetii, later with Ariovistus, king of the Germans, then with other tribes of

Gaul. Hostilities with various tribes continued for eight years, during which Cæsar proved himself a great general.

After finishing the campaign in Gaul, Cæsar became a rival of Pompey for the supremacy in Rome. The civil war followed, the republic was overthrown, and Cæsar became the first emperor of Rome. As emperor Cæsar was no less successful in organizing and ruling the empire than he had been in conquering the Gauls. But his great achievements were suddenly brought to an end by his assassination in 44 B. C.

Cæsar himself wrote an account of his several campaigns in Gaul. These accounts make up the Commentaries of Cæsar, which are now read in schools. From these Commentaries many of the exercises and passages for translation in this book are taken.

157. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Mārcus frātre^m virtūte superat.

Marcus surpasses his brother in courage.

Virtūte is in the ablative case, and tells *in what respect* Marcus excels.

158. RULE. *The ablative of specification is used to tell in what respect a thing is true.*

159. READING LESSON

Gallia est omnis divisa in partis tris. Belgae et Aquitāni et Celtae Galliam incolunt. Celtae ā Rōmānis Galli appellantur. Helvētīi quoque sunt pars Celtārum. Germāni trāns Rhēnum incolunt. Cum Germānis Helvētīi crēbris proeliis contendunt. Itaque Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superant. Sed magnō dolōre adficiēbantur, quod angustōs finis habēbant. Praetereā altis montibus et lātis flūminibus continēbantur.

160.

VOCABULARY

dolor, -ōris, m., <i>grief, sorrow.</i>	praetereā, adv., <i>besides, moreover.</i>
fīnis, -is, m., <i>end; plu., borders, territory.</i>	quod, conj., <i>because.</i>
mōns, montis, m., <i>mountain, hill.</i>	quoque, adv., <i>also.</i>
pars, -tis, f., <i>part; side (of a river), direction (of a march).</i>	reliquus, -a, -um, <i>rest, remaining, the rest of.</i>
adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>affect, afflict.</i>	trēs, tria, like plu. of omnis, <i>three.</i>
contineō, -ēre, -uī, <i>contentus, hold, restrain, hem in, bound.</i>	
dividō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, <i>divide.</i>	
incolō, -ere, -uī, —, <i>dwell, live, inhabit.</i>	

CHAPTER XXVII

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES AND THE RULES OF SYNTAX

161. Review the declension of adjectives, 53, 61, 145-147; and the rules of syntax, 29-31, 38, 40, 47, 48, 54, 83, 85, 87, 93, 119, 120, 136, 141, 158.

READING LESSON

162. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilis fuit et dives vir, nōmine Orgetorix. Clientium magnum numerum habēbat. Rēgni cupiditāte inductus, Orgetorix coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Casticus rēgnum in civitāte multōs annōs obtinuerat. Dumnorix erat audāx homō apud Haeduōs. Trium gentium principēs omnem Galliam regere cupivērunt. Sed coniūrātiō est Helvētiis ēnūntiāta et civitās Dumnorigem damnāre parābat. Sed Dumnorix auxiliō multōrum clientium

effūgit. Tamen breve erat spatium vitae. Modus mortis est incertus.

NOTE. — The few words in this passage not used before will be found in the general vocabulary.

CHAPTER XXVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION: Indicative (*complete*)

Comparative View of the Four Conjugations

163. Learn the conjugation of **audiō** through the indicative mood, active and passive (479); also learn the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive.

Comparative Review

164. Compare the forms of **audiō** with the corresponding forms of **laudō**, **moneō**, **regō**, and **capiō**, as given in 473, 476, 477, 478. Conjugate each of these verbs through the indicative mood, both voices. What are the characteristic vowels of the four conjugations (103, *a*)? Illustrate by giving the present infinitive active of a verb of each conjugation.

How is the present infinitive passive formed from the active? Cf. 75, *c*, and 103, *d*. Give the present infinitive passive of a verb of each conjugation. Give the personal endings of the perfect indicative active; also of the other tenses.

What is the tense-sign of the imperfect? the pluperfect? the future perfect? What Latin tenses will express the meaning of the English *I was praising*? *I have praised*? *I praised*? Why do we need to give the principal parts of verbs?

Give the present stem of a verb of each of the four conjugations, and tell what other tenses are formed from the same stem. What tenses are formed from the perfect stem? How is the perfect stem found? Write the perfect stem of **laudō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**. In what tenses are all verbs conjugated alike?

165.

VOCABULARY

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
fond of war. *hasten, make haste.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race*, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *for-*
nation. *tify.*

glōria, -ae, f., *honour, reputa-* pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *pun-*
tion, glory. *ish.*

maleficium, -ī, n., *harm, mis-* veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus,
chief. *come.*

EXERCISES

166. 1. Audis, capis, audiēbās, nōn audītī erant. 2. Audiar, audiris, caperis, audiēris. 3. Audiverāmus, audiētis, audītī eritis, audientur. 4. Audire, pūniri, pūnītus erās, quis pūnītus est? 5. Audivisse, pūnītus esse, veniēbat, vēnit. 6. Audītī eritis, audiēminī, audiēbāminī, audivistis. 7. Venire mātūrat, laudārī dēbent, urbs magnā vī mūnīta est. 8. Militēs asperī maleficiō ā prūdenti imperātōre pūnientur. 9. Equitēs erant audācēs et celeritāte hostīs superābant. 10. Hostēs, clāmōribus equitum permōtī, in castra venire mātūrāvērunt. 11. Equitēs bellicōsī erant.

167. 1. We hear, you will punish, they have come, the camp will be fortified. 2. He will have been heard, shouts were heard, the camp has been fortified. 3. Shouts seem to have been heard, the camp ought to be fortified and defended. 4. The leader heard the shouts and at once made haste to fortify the camp. 5. The Helvetii surpassed the neighbouring tribes in bravery.

CHAPTER XXIX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Ablative with the Comparative

168. 1. There are three degrees of comparison in Latin as in English, as :

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>cārus, dear</i>	<i>cārior, dearer</i>	<i>cārissimus, dearest</i>

2. The comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (neu. **-ius**), and the superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a**, **-um**) to the base of the positive.

NOTE. — The root of the positive of any adjective is found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular, as : **altus**, genitive **altī**, root **alt-**.

3. Compare the following :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>altus, high</i>	<i>altior, altius</i>	<i>altissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>fortis, brave</i>	<i>fortior, fortius</i>	<i>fortissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>audāx, bold</i>	<i>audācior, audācius</i>	<i>audācissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>potēns, powerful</i>	<i>potentior, potentius</i>	<i>potentissimus, -a, -um</i>

169. The superlative is declined like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um** (53). The comparative is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>altior</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>altiōrem</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altiōrēs, -īs</i>	<i>altiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōris</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>	<i>altiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōrī</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōre</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>	<i>altiōribus</i>

NOTE. — The ablative singular rarely ends in **-ī**, as : **altiōrī**.

170. Decline together *audācior cōnsul*, and *audācius animal*.

171. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Elephantus altior est quam equus.</i> | } <i>The elephant is taller than the horse.</i> |
| 2. <i>Elephantus equō altior est.</i> | |

In 1 *quam* means *than*, and the two words representing the two things compared are in the same case. In 2 *quam* is omitted and *equō* is in the ablative.

172. RULE. *The ablative is used with the comparative without quam.*

NOTE.—The ablative denotes the standard from which comparison is made (from the horse, as a standard, the elephant is taller), and is generally, though not always, placed before the comparative. The ablative without *quam* can be used only in place of the nominative or accusative case.

173. VOCABULARY

<i>amīcitia</i> , -ae, f., <i>friendship</i> .	<i>laus</i> , <i>laudis</i> , f., <i>praise</i> .
<i>Carolus</i> , -ī, m., <i>Charles</i> .	<i>leō</i> , <i>leōnis</i> , m., <i>lion</i> .
<i>cārus</i> , -a, -um, <i>dear, precious</i> .	<i>nihil</i> , incl. noun, n., <i>nothing</i> .
<i>clārus</i> , -a, -um, <i>clear, famous</i> .	<i>prōcēdō</i> , -ere, <i>prōcessī</i> , <i>prō-</i>
<i>culpa</i> , -ae, f., <i>blame</i> .	<i>cessūrus</i> , <i>go forward, ad-</i>
<i>Edvardus</i> , -ī, m., <i>Edward</i> .	<i>vance, proceed</i> .
<i>Henricus</i> , -ī, m., <i>Henry</i> .	<i>vīta</i> , -ae, f., <i>life</i> .

EXERCISES

174. 1. *Lātius flūmen, altissima maria, ā clārīōre virō.*
 2. *Carolus frātre Henricō altior est.* 3. *Elephantus leōne est validior, sed leō est ācrius animal.* 4. *Quid vitā est cārius?* 5. *Fortī virō vitā patria est cārior.* 6. *Rōmānis pīla longiōra fuērunt quam Gallis.* 7. *Edvardō pater pulchriōrem librum nōn dedit quam frātri Carolō.* 8. *Angustissima maria lātissimīs flūminibus sunt lātiōra.* 9. *Cum*

celerrimis equitibus Galli in proelium processerunt. 10 Patriam defendere est pulcherrimum.

175. 1. A swifter horse, a longer javelin, the deepest rivers. 2. Of a braver man, by a braver man, with the bravest men. 3. The eagle is swifter than the horse. 4. Many birds are swifter than the swiftest horses. 5. To all men praise is dearer than blame. 6. But to the wisest man friendship is most dear. 7. Nothing is dearer than friendship.

CHAPTER XXX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*)

Ablative of Measure of Difference

176. Adjectives in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus, thus:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser, <i>wretched</i>	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
aeger, <i>sick</i>	aegrior, -ius	aegerrimus, -a, -um
acer, <i>eager</i>	acrior, -ius	acerrimus, -a, -um

177. Six adjectives in -lis form the superlative in -limus, thus:

facilis, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, <i>like</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, <i>slender</i>	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
humilis, <i>low</i>	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um

NOTE. — Other adjectives in -lis are compared regularly, as: fidelis, *faithful*. fidelior, fidelissimus.

178. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Mōns est altior**, *the mountain is rather (or quite) high.*2. **Mōns est altissimus**, *the mountain is very high.*

a. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used in a general sense without reference to any particular person or thing. Then the comparative means *rather, quite, too*, etc., and the superlative means *very, exceedingly*.

179. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Turris multis pedibus altior est quam murus.

The tower is many feet (by many feet) higher than the wall.

180. RULE. *The measure of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

181. VOCABULARY

arma , -ōrum, plu., n., <i>arms.</i>	inter , prep. with acc., <i>between, among.</i>
cōnsilium , -ī, n., <i>plan, advice; council.</i>	lūx , lūcis, f., <i>light.</i>
difficultās , -ātis, f., <i>difficulty.</i>	nam , conj., <i>for.</i>
ferāx , -ācis, <i>fertile.</i>	potēns , -tis, <i>powerful.</i>
Georgius , -ī, n., <i>George.</i>	vallēs , -is, f., <i>valley.</i>
	volnus , -eris, n., <i>wound.</i>

EXERCISES

182. 1. **Urbs pulchra**, urbis pulchriōris, in urbibus pulcherrimis. 2. **Dux milite est potentior**, rēx est potentissimus. 3. **Cōsilia hostium lūce clāriōra sunt.** 4. **Henricō Georgius capite est altior.** 5. **Arma Rōmānōrum fuērunt graviōra.** 6. **Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Helvētīi.** 7. **Sed angustiorēs finis habēbant.** 8. **Nam flūmine Rhēnō**

lātissimō atque altissimō continēbantur. 9. Itaque lātiōrēs et ferāciōrēs agrōs petēbant. 10. Iter inter montis et flūmen erat angustius et difficillimum. 11. Angustō itinere magnā cum difficultāte carrōs gravissimōs dūcēbant.

183. 1. More severe wounds, in a fiercer battle, of a more fertile valley. 2. In a very narrow valley, between the loftiest mountains. 3. The river is quite deep. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. The horse is a very beautiful and a very swift animal. 6. The poor soldier is very sick, for the wounds are most severe. 7. The man is a foot taller than the boy.



‘TEMPLUM JOVIS CAPITOLINI
(Medallion)

CHAPTER XXXI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: Irregular Comparison.

The Partitive Genitive

184. Some adjectives are irregular in comparison, as :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, <i>better</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
malus, <i>bad</i>	peior, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	maior, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, <i>less</i>	minimus, <i>least</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, <i>most</i>

185. Declension of **plūs**, *more*; plural, *more, many, several*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

186. Some forms of the following adjectives are rarely found. Learn only those which are starred, and use the others merely for reference when needed.

1. Positive wanting:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
—	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
—	dēterior, <i>worse</i>	dēterrimus, <i>worst</i>
—	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
* —	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
* —	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>nearest,</i> <i>next, last</i>
* —	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest, last</i>

2. Positive rare except when used as nouns:

exterus, <i>outside</i>	exterior, <i>outer</i>	extrēmus (extimus), <i>outermost, farthest</i>
īferus, <i>below</i>	īferior, <i>lower</i>	īfimus or īmus, <i>low-</i> <i>est</i>
posterus, <i>following</i>	posterior, <i>later</i>	postrēmus (postumus), <i>last</i>
superus, <i>above</i>	superior, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus or summus, <i>highest, greatest</i>

ē superiōre locō tēla coniciēbant. 10. Maximīs itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit.

191. 1. For better men, by more prudent plans, by a braver leader, in a smaller town. 2. Of large rivers, into most beautiful cities, by the best and bravest leader. 3. Peace is much better than war. 4. They establish peace and friendship with the nearest states. 5. The Helvetii were braver than most tribes. 6. For they were nearest to the most warlike nations.

CHAPTER XXXII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

192. 1. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives and are compared in a similar way.

2. Adverbs may be formed from adjectives of the second declension by substituting -ē for the final -ī of the genitive singular; from adjectives of the third declension adverbs may be formed by substituting -iter for -is of the genitive singular.

ADJECTIVE	GENITIVE	ADVERB
cārus, <i>dear</i>	cārī	cārē, <i>dearly</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrī	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>
liber, <i>free</i>	liberī	liberē, <i>freely</i>
fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortis	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
ācer, <i>fierce</i>	ācris	ācriter, <i>fiercely</i>

NOTE. — Adjectives in **-ns** require only **-er** to be added to the base to form the adverb, as :

prūdēns, *wise*, **prūdentis**, **prūdentē**, *wisely*.

From **audāx** is formed **audācter**, *boldly*. And **facile**, the neuter form of **facilis**, is used as an adverb without change in form.

3. The comparative of the adverb has the same form as the neuter comparative of the adjective.

4. The superlative of the adverb is formed by substituting **-ē** for the final **-us** of the superlative of the adjective.

193. ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS		
POSITIVE	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus, <i>dear</i>	cārē	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
prūdēns, <i>wise</i>	prūdenter	prūdēntius	prūdētissimē
audāx, <i>bold</i>	audācter	audācius	audācissimē
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facile	facilius	facillimē

194. Adverbs from irregular adjectives (184):

bene, <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best, excellently</i>
male, <i>badly</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
—	magis, <i>more, rather</i>	maximē, <i>most, mostly</i>
parum, <i>too little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least, by no means</i>
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>the most, very much</i>
prope, <i>nearly, almost</i>	propius, <i>nearer</i>	proximē (186, 1), <i>most nearly, last</i>

195. Adverbs not formed from adjectives :

saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē
diū, <i>a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē

196. Quam with the superlative makes the highest possible degree, as :

1. Quam maximus numerus, *the greatest possible number.*
2. Quam fortissimē, *as bravely as possible.*

197.

VOCABULARY

adfligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictus,
damage.

celeriter, adv., *quickly.*

crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*

firmus, -a, -um, *firm,*
strong.

graviter, adv., *severely,*
heavily.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
rule, order, command.

integer, -gra, -grum, *un-*
impaired, fresh.

libenter, adv., *gladly.*

longē, adv., *far away, far.*

paulum, *little*; paulō, abl.,
by a little, little (180).

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *re-*
pair.

superbē, adv., *proudly.*

vehementer, adv., *vehe-*
mently, greatly.

EXERCISES

198. 1. Dicit liberius atque audācius. 2. Superbē et crūdēliter imperat. 3. Militēs integrīs viribus fortius pug-nāvērunt. 4. Oppidum, ā duce prūdentiōre mūnitum, vehementissimē oppugnātum est. 5. Custōdēs celeriter arma cēpērunt et oppidum diū atque ācritēr dēfendērunt. 6. Militibus nōn minōrem laudem quam ducī dare dēbē-mus. 7. Germānī, clāmōribus equitum permōtī, paulō lon-gius ā castrīs prōcessērunt. 8. Rōmānī partem minimē firmam hostium ācrius et vehementius oppugnāvērunt. 9. Nāvēs gravissimē adflictæ erant, sed cum summō stu-diō ā militibus reficiēbantur. 10. Caesar frūmentum quam celerrimē comparāvit et proximō itinere ad hostis contendit.

199. 1. Ariovistus had most eagerly sought Cæsar's friendship. 2. Now he not less gladly rejected peace. 3. All the hills and higher places were bravely held by the infantry. 4. Ambassadors were very quickly sent to the largest states. 5. More easily and more quickly they made

the march. 6. The town, having been quickly fortified, will be defended most bravely.

CHAPTER XXXIII

TEN ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN **-IUS**

Declension of **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, and **mille**

200. The following ten adjectives have **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative of all the genders (except that the genitive of **alter** generally has **-ius**). The plural is regular. See 461.

alius, **alia**, **aliud**, *other, another.*

nūllus, **-a**, **-um**, *no, no one, none.*

sōlus, **-a**, **-um**, *alone, sole, only*

tōtus, **-a**, **-um**, *whole, all, entire.*

ūllus, **-a**, **-um**, *any.*

ūnus, **-a**, **-um**, *one*; plur. *alone, only.*

alter, **altera**, **alterum**, *the other* (of two).

neuter, **neutra**, **neutrum**, *neither* (of two).

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, *which* (of two)?

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, *each* (of the two), *both.*

201. a. **Aliī . . . aliī** in contrasted clauses means *some . . . others*, as: **aliī prōcēdēbant**, **aliī remanēbant**, *some advanced, others remained.*

In like manner **alter . . . alter** means *the one . . . the other*, as: **alter prōcēdēbat**, **alter remanēbat**, *the one advanced, the other remained.*

b. One form of **alius** followed by another in the same clause is equivalent to the English double statement *one . . . one, another . . . another*, as: **legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte pugnābant**, *some legions were fighting in one place, others in another.*

202. Declension of **ūnus**, *one*; **duo**, *two*; **trēs**, *threc*; **mīlle**, *a thousand*.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, -īs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

a. As an adjective meaning *alone, only*, **ūnus** has a regular plural like **bonus** (53).

b. **Trēs** is declined just like the plural of **omnis** (146).

c. **Mīlle** in the singular is generally used as an indeclinable adjective, as: **mīlle mīlitēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. The plural is a noun followed by the partitive genitive, as: **duo mīlia mīlitum**, *two thousand soldiers*.

d. Decline together **neuter obses**, **altera pars**, **aliud tempus**.

203.

VOCABULARY

attribuō , -ere, -uī, -ūtus, <i>assign, give over to</i> .	per , prep. with acc., <i>through</i> .
cohors , -tis, f., <i>cohort</i> .	perīculum , -ī, n., <i>danger</i> .
concēdō , -ere, -cessī, -cessus, <i>yield to, give up to, grant</i> .	prōvincia , -ae, f., <i>province</i> .
maneō or remaneō , -ēre, <i>remain</i> .	sine , prep. with abl., <i>without</i> .

EXERCISES

204. 1. Tria milia pedum, cum mille militibus, cum duobus milibus equitum. 2. Germāni Suēvis ūnis concēdunt. 3. Diviciācus sōlus obsidēs dare recūsāvit. 4. Vicus in duās partis flūmine dividēbātur. 5. Alteram partem vicī Gallis concessit, alteram cohortibus lēgātus attribuit. 6. Alteri duci mille equitēs, alteri duo milia peditum attribuit. 7. Alii laudātī, alii pūnītī sunt.¹ 8. Alii aliam in partem fugiēbant. 9. Erant duo fortissimī viri in ūnā legiōne. 10. Uterque in ācerrimō proeliō volnerātus est. 11. Neuter interfectus est, nam alter ab alterō servābātur. 12. Utrī maiōrem laudem dare dēbēmus?

205. 1. With two other cohorts, of one man alone, two thousand feet. 2. In no town, without any difficulty, of neither village. 3. The Suevi remain in one place not longer than a year. 4. There were two roads; one narrow and difficult between the mountains and the river, the other, much² easier, through the province. 5. Ariovistus had seized the best part of all Gaul.

CHAPTER XXXIV

NUMERALS. READING LESSON

206. Learn the cardinals and the first twenty ordinals (467). The hundreds and all the ordinals are declined like *bonus*.

EXERCISES

207. 1. Unius annī. 2. Duārum cohortium. 3. Cum decem equitibus. 4. Militēs legiōnis nōnae et decimae. 5.

¹ *Sunt* goes with *laudātī* as well as with *pūnītī*.

² 179 and 180.

Primus centuriō cohortis primae. 6. Quintus decimus annus post caedem legiōnum.

208.

READING LESSON

Post Orgetorīgis mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi angustōs finis reliquērunt. Lātiōrēs et ferāciōrēs agrōs in aliīs civitātibus petere cōstituērunt. Ubi iter facere parātī fuērunt, oppidā omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs incendunt. Partem frūmenti portant, partem dēlent. Nihil relinquere cupiēbant. Nam omnēs puerī¹ mulierēsque² cum militibus iter faciēbant. Omnium Helvētiōrum numerus erat milium ducentōrum sexāgintā trium, Tulingōrum³ milium⁴ trigintā sex, Latobrigōrum⁵ quattuordecim, Rauracōrum viginti trium, Boiōrum trigintā duorum. Ad nōnāgintā duo milia militum arma habēbant. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia trecenta sexāgintā octō.

209.

VOCABULARY

ad , with numerals, means	parātus , -a, -um, <i>prepared</i> .
<i>towards, about, nearly.</i>	post , prep. with acc.,
cupiō , -ere, -ivī, -ītus, <i>desire</i> ,	<i>after.</i>
<i>wish.</i>	relinquō , -ere, -liquī, -lictus,
mulier , -eris, f., <i>woman.</i>	<i>leave.</i>
nihilō minus , <i>by nothing</i> (179,	summa , -ae, f., <i>sum, to-</i>
180) <i>less, nevertheless.</i>	<i>tal.</i>

¹ **Puerī** often, as here, means children in general.

² The enclitic **-que**, and (16, 17, c.), joins two words or clauses of the same construction and intimately connected in thought. When **-que** connects two *words* only, it is always joined to the second. When it connects two *phrases* or *clauses*, it is attached to the *first word* (except a preposition) of the second clause or phrase.

³ 112, a, b.

⁴ The word **numerus** is understood here and in the following expressions.

⁵ The word **millium** is understood.

CHAPTER XXXV

FOURTH DECLENSION: Stem in **-u-**

210.

Paradigm

	manus , f., <i>hand</i>	lacus , m., <i>lake</i>	cornū , n., <i>horn, wing</i> (of an army)		
Stem :	manu-	lacu-	cornū-		
Root :	man-	lac-	corn-		
SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS MAS. AND FEM. NEU.		
<i>Nom.</i>	manus	lacus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	manum	lacum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	manūs	lacūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	manuī	lacuī	cornū	-uī	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	manū	lacū	cornū	-ū	-ū
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Acc.</i>	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	manuum	lacuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. Most nouns of this declension are declined like **manus**. But **lacus**, **portus**, and a few others generally have **-ubus** in the dative and ablative plural.

b. **Domus** has some forms of the second declension, thus :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domōs , domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs , domī	domuum (domōrum)
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī , domō	domibus
<i>Abl.</i>	domō .	domibus

c. **domī** is a locative form, meaning *at home* (352).

211. RULE OF GENDER. Most nouns in **-us** of the fourth declension are masculine ; those in **-ū** are neuter. **Domus**, *house*, **Īdūs** (plur.), *the Ides*, **manus**, *hand*, and a few others are feminine.

212. Decline together **audāx exercitus**, **parva manus**, **Īdūs proximae** (plur. only), **dextrum cornū**.

213.

VOCABULARY

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, entrance*.

adventus, -ūs, m., *coming, arrival*.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began* (not found in the present system. 99, b).

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right*.

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry*.

exercitus, ūs, m., *army*.

Īdūs, -uum, plu., f., *the Ides* (the 13th or 15th day of the month).

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack; force, fury*.

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake*.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand*; (in a military sense) *a band, force*.

mercātor, -ōris, m., *trader, merchant*.

peditātus, -ūs, m., *infantry*.

portus, -ūs, m., *harbour, port*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*.

EXERCISES

214. 1. Trēs portūs, fortiōrēs exercitūs, cum maiōre impetū. **2.** Multōrum lacuum, inter magnōs lacūs, inter montis sunt multī lacūs. **3.** Agrōs et domōs sociōrum dēfendunt. **4.** Puerī mulierēsque domī remanent. **5.** Multae nāvēs in magnō portū erant. **6.** Nūllus aditus erat ad portūs mercātoribus. **7.** Cornu utrumque exercitūs maximō impetū oppugnātum est. **8.** Sinistrā ex parte flūminis parvae manūs peditātūs vidēbantur. **9.** Dux celeriter ācrem impetum cum omnī equitātū fēcīt. **10.** Caesaris adventū militēs multō audācius pugnāre coepērunt.

215. 1. Of the other port, with two armies, of the entire army. 2. From the left side the entrances of the harbour were very difficult. 3. The tenth legion will be stationed on the right wing of the army. 4. The enemy were frightened by the quick coming of the cavalry. 5. They began to attack the outer harbour with greater fury.

CHAPTER XXXVI

FIFTH DECLENSION: Stem in *-ē-*

Accusative of Extent and Ablative of Time

216.

Paradigm

	diēs, m., <i>day</i>	rēs, f. <i>thing</i>	planitiēs, f., <i>plain</i>
Stem:	diē-	rē-	planitiē-
Root:	di-	r-	planiti-
	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	planitiēs -ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	planitiem -em
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	reī	planitiēī -eī or -ēī
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	reī	planitiēī -eī or -ēī
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	planitiē -ē
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

a. In the genitive and dative, *o* before *i* is long when a vowel precedes, contrary to rule (13, *a*), as : *diēi*.

b. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have a nominative and accusative plural, as : *aciēs*, *spēs*.

c. Decline together *magna rēs*, *longior diēs*, *triplex aciēs* (given in 222).

217. RULE OF GENDER. *Nouns of the fifth declension are all feminine except diēs, day, and meridiēs, mid-day; and even diēs, in the singular, is feminine when it means merely time.*

218. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Decimō annō urbs capta est, in the tenth year the city was taken.*
2. *Patrem decem diēbus vidēbis, you will see your father within ten days.*

In 1 *annō*, in the ablative, expresses the *time when*.

In 2 *diēbus*, in the ablative, expresses the time *within which*.

219. RULE. *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.*

220. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Rēx decem annōs rēxit, the king has ruled ten years.*
2. *Turris vīgintī pedēs alta est, the tower is twenty feet high.*

In 1 *annōs*, in the accusative, expresses *duration of time*.

In 2 *pedēs*, in the accusative, expresses *extent of space*.

221. RULE. *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

222.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line* (of battle).

Aprīlis, -e, adj., *April, of April*.

instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *draw up, arrange, marshal*.

iubeō, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, *bid, order*.

mēnsis, -is, m., *month*.

passus, -ūs, m., *pace*; **mīlle passūs**, *mile*; **duo mīlia passuum** (202, c), *two miles*.

pōnō, -ere, **posuī**, **positus**, *put, place, pitch* (camp).

triplex, -icis, adj., *triple*.

EXERCISES

223. 1. Posterō diē utraque castra mūnivit. 2. Vicus planitiē¹ magnae proximus erat. 3. Ūnō diē decem milia passuum iter fēcīt. 4. In summō colle triplicem aciem instrūxit. 5. Superiōrem militum aciem castra mūnīre iussit. 6. Primā lūce cōpiac in triplici aciē prōcēdere cōpērunt. 7. Quīque diēs aciem tōtius exercitūs instrūctam habuit.² 8. Ūnum annum domī remanēbimus. 9. Multōs diēs oppidum magnō impetū ā tōtō exercitū oppugnābitur. 10. Hostēs Īdibus Aprilibus in alterā parte flūminis castra posuērunt. 11. Mēnsis Aprilis trīgintā diēs habet; Īdūs fuērunt diēs tertius decimus.

224. 1. The two ships will remain near (ad) the entrances of the harbour many days. 2. Within six months the ships will leave the outer harbour. 3. On the third day of the first month we shall leave home. 4. The soldiers of the first line will defend the camp. 5. Between the mountain and the river you will see a great plain. 6. The plain is a mile wide and three miles long.

¹ The dative is often used, as here, depending on an adjective. A more definite rule will be given later. Such a dative is usually placed before the adjective.

² **habuit**, *had* = *kept*.

CHAPTER XXXVII

REVIEW OF COMPARISON

Reading Lesson

225. Review the comparison of adjectives and adverbs (168, 176, 177, 184, 192-194).

226. Compare the adjectives *cārus*, *longus*, *lātus*, *liber*, *pulcher*, *crēber*, *ācer*, *similis*, *crūdēlis*, *gravis*, *audāx*, *prūdēns*, *bonus*, *malus*, *magnus*, and the corresponding adverbs.

STORY OF DEUCALION AND PYRRHA

The Flood

227. Fābula ā poētā Rōmānō nārrātur. Omnibus in locis terrae hominēs ōlim pessimī crūdēlissimīque fuērunt. Itaque Iuppiter tōtum genus humānum gravissimā poenā adficere cōstituit. Ex omnī caelō crēberrimōs imbris mīsit. Neptūnus quoque frātrem libentissimē iuvat. Mox terra altō mari simillima erat. Mōns Parnāsus sōlus aquā nōn tēctus erat. Deucaliōn et Pyrrha in Parnāsō manent. Suprā agrōs arātōs parvā in rate nāvigant et piscem summā in ulmō dēprēdunt. Iuppiter iam ūnum virum ex¹ multis milibus et ūnam mulierem vidit atque iram dēposuit. Nūlla mora est. Quam celerrimē Neptūnus nūbis fugāvit et flūmina mariaque revocāvit. Iam terra vidētur et maria multō angustiorēs finis habent.

¹ After a cardinal number, like *ūnus*, *ex* with the ablative is used instead of the partitive genitive (187).

228.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

arbor, -oris, f., *a tree*.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens*.

dēpōnō [dē + pōnō], -ere, -pōsuī, -positus, *lay aside*.

dēprēndō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *catch*.

Deucaliōn, -ōnis, m., *Deucalion*.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *put to flight, scatter*.

humānus, -a, -um, *human*.

ira, -ae, f., *wrath, anger*.

Iuppiter, **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter*, the ruler of gods and men.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *aid, help*.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail, go or ride (by water)*.

Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune*, brother of Jupiter, and ruler of the sea.

Parnāsus, -ī, m., *Parnassus*, a mountain in Greece.

piscis, -is, m., *fish*.

Pyrrha, -ae, f., *Pyrrha*, wife of Deucalion.

ratis, -is, f., *a raft*.

revocō [re + vocō], -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call back, recall, revoke*.

suprā, prep. with acc., *above, over*.

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*.

ulmus, -ī, f., *an elm tree*.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS,
NUMERALS, ETC.

Reading Lesson

229. Review sections 200, 202, 206, 210, 216.

STORY OF DEUCALION AND PYRRHA (*continued*)*Restoration of the Human Race*

230. Deucaliōn, miserior et sōlitūdine vehementissimē mōtus, in templum vēnit atque auxilium deōrum cupidissimē rogāvit. Deucaliōne nūllus melior vir fuit. Themis, dea iūstissima prūdentissimaque, tum ōrācula tenēbat atque precibus Deucaliōnis graviter mōta respōnsum dedit : *genus humānum restitūtum erit, sī ossa magnae parentis post¹ ter-*

¹ **Post**, *after = behind*.

gum iaciētis. Diū tacitī et perterriti manēbant, quod Pyrrha ossa parentis movēre timēbat. Tandem Deucaliōn dicit: “magna parēns terra est. Lapidēs in corpore terrae ossa dicuntur;¹ iacere lapidēs post terga iubēmur.” Iussōs lapidēs celeriter post terga mittunt. Mox lapidēs virī manibus missī fōrmam hominibus² simillimam sūmere vidēbantur. Lapidēs ā fēminā missī fēminae sunt. Sic deī brevi tempore genus humānum restituērunt.

231.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

fēmina, -ae, f., *female, woman.*

fōrma, -ae, f., *form.*

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle, prophecy.*

os, **ossis**, n., *bone.*

prex, **precis**, f., (used mostly in plural) *prayer, entreaty.*

respōnsum, -ī, n., *reply, response.*

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *restore.*

sī, conj., *if.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus, in this manner.*

sōlitūdō, -inis, f., *solitude, loneliness.*

tacitus, -a, -um, *silent.*

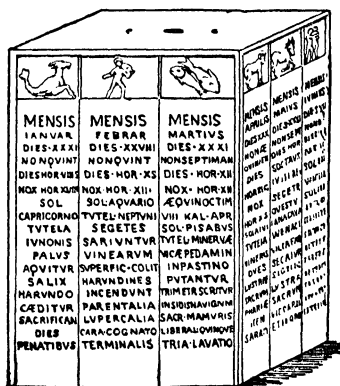
tandem, adv., *at length, at last.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back.*

Themis, -idis, f., *Themis, goddess of justice and prophecy.*

¹ **dīcuntur**, *are said = are called.*

² See 223, foot-note 1.



FARMER'S CALENDAR



SUOVETAURILIA

CHAPTER XXXIX

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

232. The relative pronoun *quī*, *who*, *which*, *that*.

Paradigm

		SINGULAR		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>who, which, that</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>whom, which, that</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>whose, of whom, of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cuī</i>	<i>cuī</i>	<i>cuī</i>	<i>to or for whom, which</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>by, with, etc., whom, which</i>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>who, which, that</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>whom, which, that</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>whose, of whom, of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>to or for whom, which</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>by, with, etc., whom, which</i>

233. The interrogative pronoun *quis*, *who?* *which?* *what?*

Paradigm

	MAS.	FEM.	SINGULAR NEU.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	<i>who? which? what?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	<i>whom? which? what?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	(cūius)	cūius	<i>whose?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	cūī	(cūī)	cūī	<i>to or for whom? etc.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	(quā)	quō	<i>by, with, etc., whom? which? what?</i>
			PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae	<i>who? which? what?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae	<i>whom? which? what?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	<i>whose?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>to or for whom? etc.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>by, with, etc., whom? which? what?</i>

a. The endings of these pronouns are very nearly like those of the adjectives given in 200.

b. The interrogative forms given in parentheses are used only as adjectives, the other forms either substantively or adjectively, thus:

SUBSTANTIVE	ADJECTIVE
1. <i>Quis vocat? who is calling?</i>	1. <i>Quī homō vocat? what man calls?</i>
2. <i>Quid vidēs? what do you see?</i>	2. <i>Quod templum vidēs? what temple do you see?</i>

234. Decline together *quī miles*, *quae mulier*, *quod animal*.

235.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Mīles, quem vidēs, vulnerātus est, the soldier, whom you see, has been wounded.*
2. *Urbēs, quās vidēs, pulchrae sunt, the cities, which you see, are beautiful.*
3. *Oppidum, quod vidēs, magnum est, the town, which you see, is large.*
4. *Mīlitēs, ā quibus urbs dēfēnsa est, laudāmus; the soldiers, by whom the city has been defended, we praise.*
5. *Equus, cui frūmentum dās, est validum animal, the horse, to which you give grain, is a strong animal.*

a. The relative pronoun refers to some word in another clause, called the antecedent, and agrees with that antecedent in gender and number. But its case may be different, for it is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands. Thus in 1, 2, 3 the antecedents, *mīles*, *urbēs*, and *oppidum*, are in the nominative case, and the relatives, *quem*, *quās*, and *quod*, which agree in number and gender with the antecedents, are objects of *vidēs*, and are therefore in the accusative. In 4 the antecedent *mīlitēs* is accusative, the object of *laudāmus*, and the relative *quibus* is the ablative of agent with *ā*. In 5 *equus* is subject of *est*, and *cui* is dative, the indirect object of *dās*.

236. RULE. *The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number.*

NOTE. — The cases of the relative are governed by the same rules by which the cases of nouns are governed.

237.

VOCABULARY

<i>coniūratiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy.</i>	<i>gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, manage, do, wage (war).</i>
<i>conloquium, -ī, n., conference.</i>	<i>nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, am born (no active voice).</i>
<i>continenter, adv., continually.</i>	<i>ubi, rel. or interrog. adv., where.</i>

EXERCISES

238. 1. Quis arcem dēfendit? 2. Ā quō arx dēfēnsa est? 3. Custōdēs, quī urbem in periculō nōn dēfendēbant, pūniri dēbent. 4. Quae arma habētis? 5. Gladiōs et pīla habēmus, quibus oppidum dēfendēmus. 6. Ubi habitās? In urbe, ubi pater nātus est, habitō. 7. Planitiēs erat magna, ad quam ducēs ad conloquium venērunt. 8. Cūius equitēs lapidēs conicere coepērunt? 9. Lapidēs ab Ariovistī equitibus, quī ab conloquiō ducentis passibus¹ cōstitūtī erant, coniciēbantur. 10. Orgetorix ab Helvētiis coniūrātiōne,² quam fēcerat, culpātus est. 11. Belgae proximī sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum³ continenter bellum gerunt. 12. Rōmānī celeritātē⁴ superābant Germānōs, quī magnitūdine corporum erant maiōrēs.

239. 1. What did you do? 2. By whom will the city be defended? 3. In what city do you live? 4. What town was destroyed? 5. Whose black horse are you leading? 6. I am leading the horse of a farmer, who lives in the next town. 7. The weapons, which the poor soldiers carried, were heavy. 8. The keeper, by whose watchfulness the citadel was saved, will be praised for his bravery.² 9. The girls, whose mother was born in America,⁵ are now in Europe.⁶

¹ 180.² 141.³ **cum**, when used with a relative pronoun, is enclitic, as: **quibuscum** with *whom*. See 16.⁴ 158.⁵ 112, *δ*.⁶ *Europe* = **Eurōpa**.



CIRCUS ROMANUS

CHAPTER XL

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Possessive Adjectives

240. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns: *ego*, *tū*, *suī*.

SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i> , <i>I</i>	<i>tū</i> , <i>thou</i> or <i>you</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i> , <i>me</i>	<i>tē</i> , <i>you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i> , <i>of me</i>	<i>tuī</i> , <i>of you</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for me</i>	<i>tibi</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for you</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i> , (<i>by</i> , etc.) <i>me</i>	<i>tē</i> , (<i>by</i> , etc.) <i>you</i>
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>nōs</i> , <i>we</i>	<i>vōs</i> , <i>you</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nōs</i> , <i>us</i>	<i>vōs</i> , <i>you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nostrum</i> , <i>nostrī</i> , <i>of us</i>	<i>vestrum</i> , <i>vestrī</i> , <i>of you</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nōbīs</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for us</i>	<i>vōbīs</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for you</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nōbīs</i> , (<i>by</i> , etc.) <i>us</i>	<i>vōbīs</i> , (<i>by</i> , etc.) <i>you</i>

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	—	—
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> , <i>himself</i> , <i>herself</i> , <i>itself</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> , <i>themselves</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>suī</i> , <i>of himself</i> , <i>herself</i> , <i>itself</i>	<i>suī</i> , <i>of themselves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sibi</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for himself</i> , <i>herself</i> , etc.	<i>sibi</i> , <i>to</i> or <i>for themselves</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> , (<i>by</i> , etc.) <i>himself</i> , <i>herself</i> , <i>itself</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>sēsē</i> , (<i>by</i> , etc.) <i>themselves</i>

241. From the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns *possessive adjectives* are formed, thus :

PRONOUN	GENITIVE	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE
ego, <i>I</i>	meī	meus, mea, meum, <i>my, mine</i>
tū, <i>thou or you</i>	tui	tuus, tua, tuum, <i>thy or your</i>
nōs, <i>we</i>	nostrum	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our</i>
vōs, <i>you</i>	vestrum	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your</i>
— <i>self</i>	sui	suus, sua, suum, <i>his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).</i>

a. The possessive adjectives are declined like **bonus**, -a, -um, except that the vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**, as : **mī fili** (44, c), *my son*.

b. **cum**, when used with the personal or reflexive pronouns, is enclitic, as : **mēcum**, *with me*. See 16 and 239, note 3.

c. The reflexive pronoun **sē** and its adjective **suus** refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand, as : **puer sē culpat**, the boy blames himself, and **puer suum frātre** **laudat**, the boy praises his (own) brother.

d. The personal pronouns are needed as subject only to express emphasis or contrast. Ordinarily the personal endings of the verb are sufficient to indicate the person.

242.

VOCABULARY

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ap-
prove, commend.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save,
preserve.*

dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *es-
teem.*

dum, conj., *as long as, 'while,
until.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *protection,
guard.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take*

back, receive; sē recipere (to
take one's self back), *retreat,
withdraw, return.*

satis, adv., *enough, sufficient,
sufficiently.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

sustineō, -ere, -uī, -tentus, *with-
stand, sustain one's self, hold
out.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

EXERCISES

243. 1. Ego sum miles, tū es nauta. 2. Tū es fortis, mī puer, et tuam virtūtem comprobō. 3. Tū, quī ā patre tuō comprobātus es, ā mē quoque laudāberis. 4. Quis tēcum vēnit? Mea māter et sorōrēs mēcum vēnērunt. 5. Vōs, quī urbem cōnsiliis vestris cōservāvistis, comprobāmus. 6. Nam vōbiscum tūtī erimus, sine vōbīs nūlla salūs erit. 7. Sed nōbīs erit satis praesidiī, dum vōs nōbiscum eritis. 8. Vestram virtūtem, fortēs custōdēs, summā cum laude comprobō. 9. Vestra virtūs ā nōbīs et ab omnibus comprobātur. 10. Nostrī¹ oppidum vehementissimē oppugnāvērunt. 11. Hostēs nōn diūtius nostrōs impetūs sustinuerunt. 12. Alterī² in proximum oppidum, alterī² ad carrōs sē recipiebant. 13. Incolae omnia sēcum sua¹ portābant.

244. 1. If you will come, I will come. 2. Who will come with you? 3. Without you your friends will not come. 4. Who gave you the book which you have with you? 5. The book which you see was given to me by my brother. 6. A man who does not esteem himself is not esteemed by others. 7. The soldier, who bravely defended his own country, was commended by all. 8. Our friends who love us ought to be esteemed by us.

¹ Adjectives and participles are often used substantively, without any noun, when the sense is clear without it, as: **omnēs**, *all*=*all men, everybody*; **armātī**, *armed*=*armed men*; **nostrī**, *ours*=*our men*; **sua**, *their own*=*their possessions*, etc.

² **Alterī . . . alterī**, *some . . . the others* (201, a).

CHAPTER XLI

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: **is, idem**245. **is, ea, id, he, she, it ; this**

				SINGULAR	Sometimes the un- emphatic <i>this, that</i> (just mentioned) (248, 3), or <i>the, a, one</i> , etc., followed by a relative (248, 4 and 5).
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.		
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	<i>he, she, it</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	<i>him, her, it</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	<i>his, her, its</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	<i>to or for him, her, it</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	<i>by, with, etc., him, her, it</i>	
				PLURAL	Sometimes <i>these</i> (just mentioned) or <i>those, the</i> , etc., fol- lowed by a rela- tive.
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.		
<i>Nom.</i>	eī	eae	ea	<i>they</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea	<i>them</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	cōrum	eārum	eōrum	<i>their</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs	eīs	eīs	<i>to or for them</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs	eīs	eīs	<i>by, with, etc., them</i>	

a. The nominative plural masculine is sometimes **iī** ; the dative and ablative plural **iīs**.

246. **idem, the same**

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
idem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

a. The nominative plural masculine is sometimes **idem** ; the dative and ablative plural **isdem** or **iīsdem**.

b. **Īdem** is declined like **is** with **-dem** added. In the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** becomes **n** before **d**.

247. Decline together **is vir, ea legiō, id bellum**.

248. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. { **Cōnsulem interfēcit et eius exercitum cēpit.**
He killed the consul and captured his army.
2. { **Duae nāvēs in portū sunt. Vīdistīne eās?**
There are two ships in the harbour. Have you seen them?
3. { **Oppidum erat magnum. In eō oppidō erat arx.**
There was a large town. In this (or that) town was a citadel.
4. { **Is quī patriam suam dēfendit comprobātur.**
He who defends his country is commended.
5. { **Cum eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, vēnit.**
He came with the legion which he had with him.

a. The Latin has no personal pronoun of the third person. See 240. But **is** very commonly takes its place, as **eius** in 1 and **eās** in 2.

b. When **is** (**ea, id**) is used as a personal pronoun, it means *he, she, it*, etc., as in 1 and 2; but when used as a demonstrative adjective, as in 3, it means *this* or *that*.

c. In 1, 2, 3, the forms of **is** all refer to something just mentioned; in 4 and 5 **is** and **ea** are used merely to introduce the following relatives. Notice the translation in 4 and 5, also the meanings given in 245.

d. But when *he* or *his* refers to the subject, the proper form of **sē** or **suus** must be used, as **suam** in 4 and **sē** in 5. Compare **eius** in 1, and see 241, *c*.

249.

VOCABULARY

aegrē (compare **aeger**), *feebly, with difficulty.*

ante, adv., or prep. with acc., *before.*

cīvis, -is, m. or f., *citizen.*

condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *conduct, lead, bring together.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *guard, protect.*

item, adv., *likewise.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hill.*

EXERCISES

250. 1. Casticus rēgnum in suā cīvitātē occupāvit, quod pater ante eum habuerat. 2. Itemque Dumnorix, quī eō tempore principātum in cīvitātē obtinēbat, idem fēcit. 3. Orgetorix omnis clientis suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, ad eundem locum condūxit; per cōs sē cōservāvit. 4. Helvētīi in Haeduōrum finis suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et eōrum agrōs vāstābant. 5. Caesar ūnō diē fēcit idem iter, quod Helvētīi diēbus vigintī aegerrimē cōnfecerant. 6. Hostēs, Caesaris adventū commōtī, ab eō locō ubi tum erant sē recipiēbant. 7. Itaque eōdem tempore Caesar sua castra mōvit. 8. Planitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus. 9. Legiōnem passibus ducentis ab eō tumulō cōstituit.

251. 1. In the same month, of the same day, by the same man. 2. His, their, whose, by whom? 3. To him, to whom, he who, that which. 4. The consul was slain by the same man by whom his father had been killed. 5. He who does not guard his friends will not be esteemed by them. 6. Those by whom we are guarded we ought to esteem. 7. We esteem those whose friendship is dear to us.

CHAPTER XLII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: *hīc, ille, iste, ipse*

252. *hīc, this*; or (less often) *he, she, it, etc.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i> ¹	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>hacc</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

253. *ille, that*; or *he, she, it, etc.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

254. *a. Ille* may be used either substantively or adjectively. As a demonstrative adjective *ille* generally means *that* in contrast to *this* (*hīc*), as: *ille vir, that man*; *illa urbs, that city*; *hīc vir, this man*; *haec urbs, this city*. When *hīc* and *ille* are contrasted with each other, they may sometimes be translated *the one . . . the other*, or *the former . . . the latter*, etc., as: *in eādem cīvitāte fuērunt duo virī; ille ōrātor, hīc mīles fortis fuit, in the same state were two men; the one (or the former) was an orator, the other (or the latter) was a brave soldier.*

¹ The vowels in *hīc* and *hōc*, though sometimes short, are more commonly long, and will be so written in the exercises of this book.

b. When contrasted with the personal pronouns or with nouns, **ille** is usually translated simply *he, she, it*, etc., like **is**, except that **is** refers back to the person or thing just mentioned without contrast (see 248, 1, 2, 3), while **ille** always implies a contrast or change of subject, and is therefore generally emphatic, as: **frātrēm meum nōn saepe videō, nam ille in Eurōpā est, sed ego domī maneō**, *my brother I do not often see, for he is in Europe, but I am staying at home.*

255. **iste, ista, istud**, *that*

a. **Iste** is declined just like **ille**. It is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, as: **estne iste liber tuus**, *is that book (which you have) yours?*

256. **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, *self*

a. **Ipsē** is an intensive pronoun used to add emphasis to some noun, or pronoun, with which it agrees like an adjective, as: **ipse vir**, *the man himself*, **tū ipse**, *you yourself*.

b. **Ipsē** may sometimes be translated *very, merely*, etc., as: **ipse rūmor bellī urbem terruit**, *the rumour itself (the very rumour) (the mere rumour) of war alarmed the city.*

NOTE. — The intensive pronoun **ipse, self**, must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive **sē, self**, which is used in some part of the predicate to refer back to the subject, as: **ipse vir dixit**, *the man himself spoke*; but **vir sē dēfendit**, *the man defended himself*. Compare 241, c, with *a* above.

257. Decline together **haec rēs, ille miles, istud bellum, ipse magister**.

258.

VOCABULARY

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, gratifying.*

invidia, -ae, f., *envy, greed.*

nōn solum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*

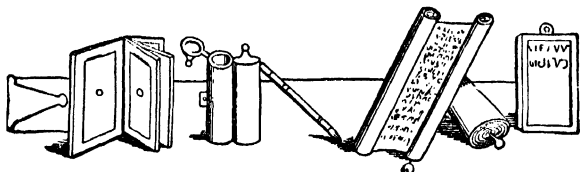
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, give up, return.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank (of a river).*

EXERCISES

259. 1. In hāc urbe, illius urbis, huic legiōnī, istius librī. 2. Ab ipsō duce, hae mulierēs ipsae et liberī eārum. 3. Ista, mī fili, est invidia, sī aliis nōn dās id quod tū ipse nōn cupis. 4. Hae legiōnēs in ipsis flūminis rīpīs pugnābant. 5. Ipse Ariovistus magnam adrogantiam sibi sūmpserat. 6. Diviciācus et Dumnorix erant frātrēs; ille ab omnibus diligēbātur, hīc culpābātur. 7. Hī sunt eīdem Germānī, quibuscum Helvētīi saepe nōn solum in suis¹ sed etiam in illōrum² finibus bellum gessērunt. 8. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. 9. Hanc nōn solum nostri sed etiam illi² vitābant. 10. Hōs obsidēs, quōs ego habeō, reddam, sī illae civitatēs et socii eōrum³ lēgātōs, quōs illi² habent, mihi reddent.

260. 1. In that town, by this leader, the boy himself and his friend. 2. Whose is that book, which you have with you? 3. Those men are in arms, these women remain at home.⁴ 4. To us this victory is more pleasing than to them. 5. This boy is more active than his brother. 6. For that which the brother himself did in two days⁵ he will do in one day.

¹ 248, *d*.² 254, *b*.³ 248, *i* and *a*.⁴ 210, *c*.⁵ 219.

ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

CHAPTER XLIII

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS

Reading Lesson

261. Decline *quis* and *quī* (232, 233); *ego*, *tū*, *sē* (240). Name the five possessive adjectives, and tell from their derivation (241) what they each mean. How do *tuus* and *vester* differ in meaning? Illustrate by a short sentence in Latin when to use *eius* and when *suus* for *his*. Decline *is* and *idem*. Translate *is quī, idem homō, idem quod iste vir fēcit hīc puer faciet*. Decline *hīc*, *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*. How does *ipse* differ in use and meaning from *sē*? What is the meaning of *is* as an adjective? as a pronoun? Is *ille* or *is* the more emphatic? Which of the two occurs more frequently in the nominative as a pronoun? Ans. *ille*; for *no personal* pronoun is usually required in the nominative except for contrast or change of subject (254, *b*). What is the meaning of *hīc* and *ille* when contrasted with each other? When should *iste* be used for *that*? Ask in Latin: *Is that book yours?* Answer in Latin.

THE GOLDEN TOUCH OF MIDAS

262. Bacchus¹ ōlim Midae, rēgī Phrygiae, quī eī grātum fēcerat,² arbitrium mūneris dedit. Ille autem³ dixit: “mihi grātissimum mūnus erit, sī id quod meō corpore tetigerō in aurum vertētur.” Cui deus, maestus quod meliōra nōn petierat, dixit: “tū quī istud mūnus petisti⁴ nōn prūdentē petisti.” Sed mūnus deī nōn revocātum est. Sine morā Midās saxum in dextram manum sūmit. Statim saxum est

¹ Bacchus, the god of wine.

² grātum faciō = *I do a favour*.

³ autem = *but*, used for contrast or change of subject, and always placed after one or two words of a sentence.

⁴ Contracted form for petisti.

māssa aurī. Arborēs ac flōrēs extrēmīs¹ digitīs tangit. Arborēs flōrēsque radiāre videntur. Tum rēx superbissimē in rēgiam sē recēpit. Omnia quae tangit sunt aurea. Etiam cibus quem rēx ōre tetigerat in māssam aurī vertēbātur. Vinum quoque, quod ē pōculō fundere coeperat, est aureum flūmen.² Omnium hominum rēx iam miserrimus fuit. Tandem famē sitique victus, mūnus quod ipse petierat effugere cupiēbat. Iterum dei auxilium petiit. Huic³ ille⁴ respōnsum dedit: "sī ad flūmen Pactōlum veniēs et corpus tuum in eius aquā mergēs, vīs aurea⁵ dē⁶ tuō corpore in flūmen cēdet. Rēx ea quae iussus est fēcit, atque ex eō tempore Pactōlus aureis harēnis fluere dicitur.

263.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

arbitrium, -ī, n., *choice, decision.*

aureus, -a, -um, *golden, of gold.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *go from, pass from.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food.*

digitus, -ī, m., *finger.*

effugiō, -ere, effūgī, effugitūrus, *escape.*

famēs, -is, f., *hunger.*

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour.*

harēna, -ae, f., *sand.*

iterum, adv., *again.*

maestus, -a, -um, *sad.*

māssa, -ae, f., *mass.*

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, *dip, plunge, immerse.*

Midās, -ae, m., *Midas.*

mūnus, -eris, n., *gift, reward, service.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth.*

Pactōlus, -ī, m., *Pactolus, a river of Lydia.*

pōculum, -ī, n., *a cup.*

radiō, -āre, —, —, *gleam, glitter.*

rēgia, -ae, f., *royal palace.*

sis, -is, f., *thirst.*

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactus, *touch.*

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *turn, change.*

¹ *extreme = extremities of, ends of, tips of, etc.*

² *stream.*

³ *to him = Midas.*

⁴ *he (emphatic) = Bacchus.*

⁵ *force of gold = the power to turn things to gold.*

⁶ *from.*

CHAPTER XLIV

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. COMPOUND VERBS

264. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs, the Belgae are nearest (next) to the Germans.*
2. *Mihi voluntās tua est grāta, your good-will is pleasing to me.*

RULE. *Adjectives meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites, take the dative.*

265. VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, <i>certain.</i>	rus, <i>come through ; (with ad)</i>
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,	<i>reach, arrive at.</i>
<i>come together, meet.</i>	prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, <i>pro-</i>
fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxūrus, <i>flow.</i>	<i>hibit, stop.</i>
Genava, -ae, f., <i>Geneva.</i>	rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus,
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>prepare.</i>	<i>tear down, destroy.</i>
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, ex-	Rhodanus, -ī, m., <i>Rhone.</i>
<i>tend.</i>	voluntās, -ātis, f., <i>good-will,</i>
pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventū-	<i>willingness, consent.</i>

READING LESSON

266. Inter finīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus ¹ Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Hōc ponte Helvētīi cōpiās suās trāns flūmen trādūcere cupivērunt. Certā diē ad ripam eius flūminis omnēs convenīre parāvērunt. Caesarī ubi haec rēs nūtiāta est, eōs per vim prohibēre cōstituit. Itaque quam celerimē omnis militēs prōvinciae tōtīus in ūnum locum con-

¹ The word **finibus** is dative after **proximum**, and **Genava** is subject

dūcit. Maximīs itineribus ex urbe mātūrat et ad Genavam pervenit. Pontem quī ad Genavam erat iubet rescindi.

Compound Verbs

267. Verbs are often compounded with prepositions, thus :

ā-mittō, *send away.*

ad-mittō, *send to, admit.*

ē-mittō, *send out, emit.*

im-mittō, *send in, let in.*

inter-mittō, *intermit, interrupt.*

prae-mittō, *send ahead.*

re-mittō, *send back.*

trāns-mittō, *send across.*

a. The final consonant of a preposition is often changed when it comes before a different consonant, thus :

in + mittō becomes **immittō** ; **ad + tribuō** becomes **attribuō**.

The change of a consonant so as to make it like the one that follows it is called *assimilation*.

b. The vowel **a** or **e** in the stem of a word often becomes **i** in composition, thus :

ad + capiō becomes **accipiō** ; **ex + faciō** becomes **efficiō** ; **con + teneō** becomes **contineō**.

CHAPTER XLV

DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

READING LESSON

268. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitatīs. Sine ūllō maleficiō eius voluntāte iter per prōvinciam facere cupivērunt. Nam aliud iter habēbant nūllum. Dē hāc rē paucōs diēs Caesar dēliberāvit, et lēgātōs certā diē ad sē convenire iussit.

Intereā eius militēs, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū ad montem milia passuum decem novem mūrum altissimum perdūcunt. Hunc firmissimō praesidiō mūniri iussit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, iter iis per prōvinciam dare recūsāvit. Itaque Helvētii per vim iter facere temptāvērunt. Sed, militum tēlis repulsi atque eā spē dēiecti, hōc itinere nōn prōcēdebant.

269.

VOCABULARY

certior factus est, *was made more certain = was informed.*

dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning, with reference to; from, down from.*

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *cast down; dēiectus, disappointed.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deliberate.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile.*

paucī, -ae, -a, plu., *few.*

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, run (a wall).*

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel.*

spēs, -eī, f., *hope.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *try, attempt.*

270.

Derivative Nouns and Adjectives

1. The suffix **-tor** (or **-sor**, if the participle ends in **-sus**) added to roots or verb-stems forms nouns denoting agent or doer.

a. As the suffix **-tor** is added to the same stem and in the same way as the suffix **-tus** which forms the perfect participle, nouns of agency may be easily formed by merely changing the final **-us** of the perfect participle to **-or**, thus :

VERB	PARTICIPLE	NOUN
vīncō , <i>conquer;</i>	victus;	victor , <i>conqueror.</i>
dēfendō , <i>defend;</i>	dēfēnsus;	dēfēnsor , <i>defender.</i>

Form nouns from **amō**, **imperō**, **ōrō**, **doceō**, **moneō**, etc.

2. The suffixes **-tus** and **-tiō** (or **-sus** and **-siō**) added to verb-stems form nouns denoting action, as :

VERB	PARTICIPLE	NOUN
canō , <i>sing</i> ;	cantus ;	cantus , <i>singing</i> .
dēfendō , <i>defend</i> ;	dēfēnsus ;	dēfēnsiō , <i>defence</i> .
mūniō , <i>fortify</i> ;	mūnītus ;	mūnītiō , <i>fortification</i> .
ōrō , <i>speak, plead</i> ;	ōrātus ;	ōrātiō , <i>speech, oration</i> .

3. From verb-stems many adjectives are formed by the suffixes **-āx** and **-bilis** or **-ilis**, as :

VERBS	ADJECTIVES
pugnō , <i>fight</i> ;	pugnāx , <i>pugnacious, inclined to fight</i> .
audeō , <i>dare</i> ;	audāx , <i>audacious, bold, daring</i> .
crēdō , <i>believe</i> ;	crēdibilis , <i>credible, believable</i> .
faciō , <i>do</i> ;	facilis , <i>easy to do, easy</i> .

4. From nouns many adjectives are formed by the suffixes **-eus** and **-ālis**, **-ēlis**, **-ilis**, as :

NOUNS	ADJECTIVES
ignis , <i>fire</i> ;	igneus , <i>fiery, igneous</i> .
aurum , <i>gold</i> ;	aureus , <i>golden</i> .
rēx , <i>king</i> ;	rēgālis , <i>kingly, regal</i> .
mors , <i>death</i> ;	mortālis , <i>mortal</i> .
fidēs , <i>faith</i> ;	fidēlis , <i>faithful</i> .
hostis , <i>enemy</i> ;	hostīlis , <i>hostile</i> .

5. From adjectives many abstract nouns are formed by the suffixes **-ia** or **-tia**; also many with **-tās** and **-tūdō**, as :

ADJECTIVES	NOUNS
audāx , <i>bold</i> ;	audācia , <i>boldness, audacity</i> .
prūdēns , <i>prudent</i> ;	prūdentia , <i>prudence, foresight</i> .
amicus , <i>friendly</i> ;	amīcitia , <i>friendship</i> .
liber , <i>free</i> ;	libertās , <i>liberty</i> .
magnus , <i>great</i> ;	magnitūdō , <i>greatness, magnitude</i> .

Form nouns in **-tūdō** from **longus**, **lātus**, **altus**, **multus**, **fortis**, etc.

CHAPTER XLVI

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Active Voice (*all conjugations*)

Subjunctive of Purpose

271.

*Paradigm**Present*

SINGULAR

I may praise, advise, rule, take, hear, be.

laudem	moneam	regam	capiam	audiam	sim
laudēs	moneās	regās	capiās	audiās	sīs
laudet	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat	sit

PLURAL

laudēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus	simus
laudētis	moneātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis	sītis
laudent	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant	sint

Imperfect

SINGULAR

I might praise, advise, rule, take, hear, be.

laudārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem	essem
laudārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audirēs	essēs
laudāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret	esset

PLURAL

laudārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus	essēmus
laudārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audirētis	essētis
laudārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent	essent

Perfect

SINGULAR

I have praised, advised, ruled, taken, heard, been.

laudāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	cēperim	audīverim	fuerim
laudāveris	monueris	rēxeris	cēperis	audīveris	fueris
laudāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	cēperit	audīverit	fuerit

PLURAL

laudāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus	fuerimus
laudāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis	fueritis
laudāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	cēperint	audiverint	fuerint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR

I had praised, advised, ruled, taken, heard, been.

laudāvissem	monuisssem	rēxissem	cēpissim	audivissem	fuissem
laudāvissēs	monuissēs	rēxissēs	cēpissēs	audivi	fuiassēs
laudāvisset	monuisset	rēxisset	cēpisset	audivisset	fuisset

PLURAL

laudāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audivissēmus	fuisssēmus
laudāvissētis	monuissētis	rēxissētis	cēpissētis	audivissētis	fuisssētis
laudāvissent	monuissent	rēxissent	cēpissent	audivissent	fuisssent

a. The subjunctive present in all conjugations except the first has the mood vowel **-ā-** before the personal endings (70). In the first conjugation, where the indicative has **-ā-**, the subjunctive has **-ē-**. **Sum** and a few other irregular verbs have **-ī-**.

b. The imperfect subjunctive of all Latin verbs of whatever conjugation may be formed by simply adding the personal endings to the present infinitive, thus: **esse + m = essem**; **laudāre + m = laudārem**, etc.

c. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctives are formed from the perfect stem by the suffixes **-eri-** and **-isse-**, which with the personal endings give **-erim** and **-issem**. In form the perfect subjunctive, except in the first person singular, is just like the future perfect indicative.

d. The pluperfect subjunctive may also be formed directly by adding the personal endings to the perfect infinitive, thus: **fuisse + m = fuissem**; **laudāvisse + m = laudāvissem**, etc.

e. The meanings given above to the different tenses are common, but not the only, meanings of these tenses. The other

meanings are due to their relation to other parts of the sentence in which they occur, and can be learned only by practice.

272.

Subjunctive of Purpose

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Venit ut videat, he comes that he may see (to see, in order to see), etc.*
2. *Mātūrāvit nē hostēs urbem dēlērent, he made haste that the enemy might not destroy the city.*

273. RULE. *The subjunctive with ut, or negative nē, is used to express purpose.*

274.

VOCABULARY

cum, conj., *when, since, though.*

tamen, conj., *yet, nevertheless.*

ut, conj., *that, in order that.*

nē, conj., *that not, lest.*

ita, adv., *so, in such a way.*

scrībō, -ere, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptus**,
write.

cōn-scrībō, -scrībēre, -**scrīpsī**,
-**scrīptus**, *write down, enlist,*
enroll.

EXERCISES

275. 1. Arma capiunt ut hostis repellant. 2. Mātūrāvērunt ut pontem dēlērent. 3. Vēnistīne ut urbem videās? 4. Nōne mātūrābitis ut castra custodiātis? 5. Vēnimus ut tē laudēmus. 6. Cum¹ hostis reppulisset, cōpiās suās in castra redūxit. 7. Cum² nostrī oppidum nōn cēperint, tamen virtūte eōs laudāmus. 8. Cum³ hās rēs ita cōstitueritis, prōcēdēmus. 9. Caesar, cum¹ in citeriōrem Galliam vēnisset, dē Belgārum coniūrātiōne audīvīt. 10. Atque in eō locō remānsit dum legiōnēs, quās cōscripserat, convenirent. 11. Domī manēbō dum ad mē dē hīs rēbus scrībās.

¹ *When.*

² *Although.*

³ *Since.*

276. 1. This man has come that he may see our city. 2. They came that they might praise you. 3. He will wait in this city till you (may) come. 4. Though¹ our men were brave, they did not conquer. 5. When¹ Cæsar had heard about this conspiracy, he enrolled two new legions. 6. Since¹ you have written to me, I will come to the city to see you (cf. 272, 1).

CHAPTER XLVII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Its General Character

Subjunctive with *cum*, and Subjunctive of Result

277. *a.* The indicative mood states a thing as a fact, as : *mīles erat fortis*, *the soldier was brave* ; *mīles fortiter pugnāverat*, *the soldier had fought bravely* ; *mīles fortiter pugnābit*, *the soldier will fight bravely*, etc. The subjunctive states what *may be*, *would be*, *had been*, or *would have been*, etc., under certain circumstances, as : *ut mīles sit fortis*, *that the soldier may be brave* ; *sī mīles fuisset fortis*, *fortius pugnāvisset*, *if the soldier had been brave, he would have fought more bravely* ; *mīles, cum fortiter pugnāvisset, victus est*, *the soldier, though he had fought bravely, was conquered*.

b. The subjunctive is more generally used in dependent clauses, where the English sometimes uses the indicative and sometimes *may*, *might*, *should*, *would*, etc., or even the infinitive. In translation, therefore, substitute for the subjunctive the form that will best express the sense. More definite rules will be given as required.

¹ *Cum*, to be followed by the subjunctive.

278.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Hostēs, cum equitēs nōn habērent, nōn effūgērunt,
the enemy did not escape, since they had no cavalry.
2. Caesar hostīs, cum oppida eōrum expugnāset, nōn
cēpit, *Cæsar did not capture the enemy, though he had
taken their towns.*
3. Militēs, cum Caesar vēnisset, fortius pugnāre coepē-
runt, *the soldiers, when Cæsar came, began to fight
more boldly.*
4. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, erant duæ factiōnēs,
when Cæsar came into Gaul, there were two factions.

a. **Cum** meaning *since* is *causal*; meaning *though* (or *although*) is *concessive*; meaning *when* is *temporal*.

279. RULE. 1. **Cum** *causal* or *concessive* always takes the subjunctive.

2. **Cum** *temporal* takes the subjunctive when it denotes the circumstances or occasion for some other act.

a. When **cum** denotes simply the time, and not the circumstances or occasion for some other act, it takes the indicative as in 4 above. Here Cæsar's coming had nothing to do with the factions in Gaul, while in 3 Cæsar's coming was the occasion under which the soldiers were encouraged to fight more bravely. The past tenses of the indicative with **cum** are not very frequent.

b. The meaning and uses of **cum** may be summarized thus:

cum, meaning *since*, is *causal* with the subjunctive.

cum, meaning *though*, is *concessive* with the subjunctive.

cum, meaning *when*, is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{either } \textit{purely temporal} \text{ with the indicative} \\ \text{or } \textit{circumstantial} \text{ with the subjunctive.} \end{array} \right.$

Subjunctive of Result

280.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Miles tam fortiter pugnāvit ut mortem vitāret, *the soldier fought so bravely that he escaped death.*
2. Miles ita perterritus est ut sē nōn dēfenderet, *the soldier was so frightened that he did not defend himself.*

a. The *ut*-clauses in these two sentences both denote result, and take the subjunctive like clauses of purpose. But in purpose clauses *nē* (see 272, 2) is used for the negative *that not*, while in result clauses *nōn*, *not*, is a separate word as in English.

281. RULE. *The subjunctive with ut, negative ut nōn, is used to denote result.*

NOTE. — Observe that in purpose clauses the subjunctive is usually translated by the English *may* or *might*, or by the infinitive, while in result clauses the subjunctive is generally translated by the English indicative.

282.

VOCABULARY

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, <i>flee, escape.</i>	renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (<i>renovō</i> from <i>novus</i> , <i>new</i>), <i>renew.</i>
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>seize, occupy.</i>	sic, adv., <i>so, in such a manner.</i>
perterritus, -a, -um, <i>frightened.</i>	tam, adv., <i>so, to such a degree.</i>

EXERCISES

283. 1. Dux mātūrāvit ut oppidum mūniret. 2. Oppidum sic mūnitum est ut tūtum esset. 3. Imperātor tam celeriter impetum fēcit ut hostēs ad salūtem fugerent. 4. Dux quam maximis itineribus contēdit nē hostēs oppidum occupārent. 5. Dux tam celeriter vēnit ut hostēs oppidum nōn occupārent. 6. Cum flūmen altum esset, tamen Caesar pontem fēcit ut exercitum suum trādūceret. 7. Cum bel-

lum cōnfēcisset, pontem rescidit. 8. Cum dux vēnisset, animus militum ita renovātus est ut statim in hostis impetum facerent. 9. Helvētīi, cum angustōs finis habērent, domōs suās reliquērunt ut aliēnōs finis occupārent.

284. 1. When you came, I was writing a letter. 2. When Cæsar had built a bridge, the enemy were so frightened that they fled. 3. Although the enemy are brave, we will not fear. 4. The leader was so brave that the soldiers praised him. 5. This king rules well that the people may praise him. 6. That king ruled so cruelly that the people did not love him.

CHAPTER XLVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Passive Voice (*all conjugations*)

Indirect Questions and Sequence of Tenses

285.

*Paradigm**Present*

SINGULAR

I may be praised, advised, ruled, etc.

lauder	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
laudēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
laudētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur

PLURAL

laudēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
laudēmini	moneāmini	regāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
laudentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

Imperfect

SINGULAR

I might be praised, advised, ruled, etc.

laudārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
laudārēris	monērēris	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
laudārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur

PLURAL

laudārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
laudārēmini	monērēmini	regerēmini	caperēmini	audirēmini
laudārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audirentur

Perfect

SINGULAR

I have been praised, advised, ruled, etc.

laudātus sim	monitus sim	rēctus sim	captus sim	audītus sim
laudātus sis	monitus sis	rēctus sis	captus sis	audītus sis
laudātus sit	monitus sit	rēctus sit	captus sit	audītus sit

PLURAL

laudāti simus	moniti simus	rēcti simus	capti simus	auditi simus
laudāti sitis	moniti sitis	rēcti sitis	capti sitis	auditi sitis
laudāti sint	moniti sint	rēcti sint	capti sint	auditi sint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR

I had been praised, advised, ruled, etc.

laudātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	captus essem	audītus essem
laudātus essēs	monitus essēs	rēctus essēs	captus essēs	audītus essēs
laudātus esset	monitus esset	rēctus esset	captus esset	audītus esset

PLURAL

laudāti essēmus	moniti essēmus	rēcti essēmus	capti essēmus	auditi essēmus
laudāti essētis	moniti essētis	rēcti essētis	capti essētis	auditi essētis
laudāti essent	moniti essent	rēcti essent	capti essent	auditi essent

a. The present and imperfect subjunctive passive are formed from the active by merely substituting the passive endings for the active.

b. The perfect and pluperfect are formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **sim** and **essem**. Cf. 99, c.

286.

Indirect Questions

DIRECT

1. Quid facis? *what are you doing?*
3. Cūr vēnistī? *why did you come?*

INDIRECT

2. Videt quid faciās, *he sees what you are doing.*
4. Audīvī cūr vēnissēs, *I heard why you had come.*

a. It is readily seen that *quid faciās* (2) and *cūr vēnissēs* (4) are dependent clauses in the form of a question, being introduced by the interrogatives *quid* and *cūr*. The questions in 2 and 4 are implied without being asked directly as in 1 and 3, and hence are called *indirect questions*.

b. DEFINITION. *An indirect question is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word.*

287. RULE. *The verb in an indirect question is in the subjunctive mood.*

288.**Sequence of Tenses**

We say : 1. I *come* that I *may* see (or *to see*), *veniō ut videam*.

2. I *came* that I *might* see (or *to see*), *vēnī ut vidērem*.

3. I *see* what he *has* done, *videō quid fēcerit*.

4. I *saw* what he *had* done, *vīdī quid fēcisset*.

a. The change of *may* (1) to *might* (2) and *has* (3) to *had* (4), when the leading verb is changed from the present to the past, shows what is meant by *Sequence of Tenses*.

289.**ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES****I. Primary or Principal Tenses**

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Videt , he sees | quid faciam , what I am doing (or do) |
| 2. Vidēbit , he will see | (action not past). |
| 3. Viderit , he will have seen | quid fēcerit , what I have done (did, |
| 4. Vīdit , he has seen | was doing) (action past). |

II. Secondary or Historical Tenses

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Vidēbat , he saw, was seeing | quid facerem , what I was doing |
| | (or did) (action not past). |
| 2. Vīdit , he saw | quid fēcissem , what I had done |
| 3. Vīderat , he had seen | (action past). |

a. Notice that the first group of tenses, called primary, includes the *present*, *future*, *future perfect*, and *perfect* indicative followed by the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive. The second group of tenses, called historic, includes the *imperfect*, *perfect*, and

pluperfect indicative followed by the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* indicative is primary or historic, according to its meaning.

290. RULE. A *primary* tense is followed by the subjunctive *present* for action *not past*, or by the *perfect* for action *past*; a *historic* tense is followed by the subjunctive *imperfect* for action *not past*, or by the *pluperfect* for action *past*.

291.

VOCABULARY

calamitās, -ātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

quantus, -a, -um, *how great?*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great.*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many?*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, or scīī,

scitus, *know.*

cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cō-

gnitus, *learn; cōgnōvī, I have*

learned, or I know.

EXERCISES

292. 1. Cōgnōvī cūr vēneris. 2. Sciō quid proximā nocte fēceris. 3. Nōn certior factus sum¹ cūr miles pūnirētur. 4. Rogāvimus quot militēs interfectī essent. 5. Cōgnōvistī quantā cum virtūte cīvium urbs cōservāta sit. 6. Quis sim sciēs ex eō quem ad tē misī. 7. Nostrī, cum ab hostibus numerō² superārentur, tamen diū atque ācriter pugnābant. 8. Cum clāmōrēs audītī essent, militēs prōcēdere coepērunt. 9. Fortissimē pugnābunt nē culpentur. 10. Tam fortiter pugnābant ut nōn calamitāte culpārentur. 11. Haec urbs mūnita erat nē ab hostibus caperētur. 12. Haec urbs tanta est et tot virōs habet ut ab hostibus tūta sit.

293. 1. I see what they are doing. 2. He asks how many soldiers have been killed. 3. I did not learn why this man was being punished. 4. I knew why you had been praised. 5. This town is being fortified that it may not be captured. 6. That you may be praised, that they may be warned, that we might not be punished.

¹ 269.

² 157, 158.

CHAPTER XLIX

IMPERATIVE MOOD: Active Voice

Reading Lesson

294.

Paradigm

Present

SINGULAR

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. — | — |
| 2. es, <i>be</i> (thou) | laudā, <i>praise</i> (thou) |

PLURAL

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. — | — |
| 2. este, <i>be</i> (ye) | laudāte, <i>praise</i> (ye) |
| 3. — | — |

SINGULAR

- | | | | |
|---------|------|------|------|
| 2. monē | rege | cape | audī |
|---------|------|------|------|

PLURAL

- | | | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|--------|
| 2. monēte | regite | capite | audīte |
|-----------|--------|--------|--------|

Future

SINGULAR

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. — | — |
| 2. estō, <i>thou shalt be</i> | laudātō, <i>thou shalt praise</i> |
| 3. estō, <i>he shall be</i> | laudātō, <i>he shall praise</i> |

PLURAL

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. — | — |
| 2. estōte, <i>ye shall be</i> | laudātōte, <i>ye shall praise</i> |
| 3. suntō, <i>they shall be</i> | laudantō, <i>they shall praise</i> |

SINGULAR

- | | | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|--------|
| 2. monētō | regitō | capitō | audītō |
| 3. monētē | regitō | capitō | audītō |

PLURAL

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------|----------|----------|
| 2. monētōte | regitōte | capitōte | audītōte |
| 3. monentō | reguntō | capluntō | audiuntō |

a. The singular of the present imperative may be formed by dropping the *-re* (*-se* from *esse*) from the infinitive, thus:

Infinitive: *esse, laudāre, monēre, regere, capere, audire.*

Imperative: *es, laudā, monē, rege, cape, audī.*

b. The singular future imperative may be formed by affixing *-ō* to the third person of the present indicative, as:

Indicative: *est, laudat, monet, regit, capit, audit.*

Imperative: *estō, laudātō, monētō, regitō, capitō, auditō.*

EXERCISES

295. 1. *Es fortis, este fortēs, regitō, scribite.* 2. *Suntō, capitō, monētōte, audiuntō.* 3. *Capite arma, militēs, et ad castra mātūrāte.* 4. *Scribe ad mē, mī fili, quid faciās.* 5. *Dīc¹ mihi, mī puer, quid fēceris.* 6. *Venī, Mārce, et dūc tēcum amicōs tuōs.* 7. *Remanē dum veniam.*

296. 1. Be wise, rule wisely, love your friends. 2. He shall rule, they shall conquer, ye shall advise. 3. Hear and thou shalt know. 4. Do well and thou shalt be praised.

READING LESSON

297. *Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. Sed haec via angustior fuit. Praetereā Sēquanī iter Helvētiīs per suōs finis dare recūsāvērunt. Eō tempore Dumnorīx Haeduus nōn solum Sēquanīs sed etiam Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat. Itaque per Dumnorigem, dēprecātōrem, Helvētīi ā Sēquanīs impetrāvērunt ut essent amicī obsidēsque inter sē darent. Sēquanī obsidēs dant nē Helvētiōs prohibeant. Helvētīi quoque obsidēs dant ut sine ūllō maleficiō iter faciant.*

NOTE. — The new words in this lesson are in the general vocabulary.

¹ *Dīco, dūcō, faciō, and ferō* drop the final *e* in the singular of the present imperative active, leaving *dīc, dūc, fac, and fer.*

CHAPTER L

IMPERATIVE MOOD : Passive Voice

Reading Lesson

298.

Paradigm

<i>Present</i>		
SINGULAR		
1. _____	_____	_____
2. laudāre, <i>be thou praised</i>	monēre, <i>be thou advised</i>	
3. _____	_____	
PLURAL		
1. _____	_____	
2. laudāmini, <i>be ye praised</i>	monēmini, <i>be ye advised</i>	
3. _____	_____	
SINGULAR		
2. regere	capere	audire
PLURAL		
2. regimini	capimini	audimini
<i>Future</i>		
SINGULAR		
1. _____	_____	
2. laudātor, <i>thou shalt be praised</i>	monētor, <i>thou shalt be advised</i>	
3. laudātor, <i>he shall be praised</i>	monētor, <i>he shall be advised</i>	
PLURAL		
1. _____	_____	
2. _____	_____	
3. laudantor, <i>they shall be praised</i>	monentor, <i>they shall be advised</i>	
SINGULAR		
2. regitor	capitor	auditor
3. regitor	capitor	auditor
PLURAL		
3. reguntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

NOTE.—The singular of the present imperative passive, in form, is like the present infinitive active. The future imperative passive is formed from the active by adding *r*.

EXERCISES

299. 1. Laudātor, monēminī, monēre. 2. Regitor, capiuntor, auditor. 3. Audiminī, laudātor, laudāre.

300. 1. Thou shalt be ruled, they shall be ruled, he shall be praised. 2. Be thou praised, be ye praised, they shall be warned.

READING LESSON

301. Ubi Caesar dē Helvētiōrum itinere certior factus est, eam mūnitiōnem, quam fēcerat, Labiēnum lēgātum dēfendere iussit. Ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit et trīs quae circum Aquilēiā hīemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit. Cum hīs quinque legiōnibus per montis in ulteriōrem Galliā contendit. Multae gentēs loca superiōra occupāvērunt ut exercitum Rōmānum prohibērent. Caesar, cum hās gentis multis proeliis pepulisset, ab Ocelō, quod oppidum est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finis Vocontiōrum diē septimō pervēnit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.



MILITES ROMANI LEGIONARIJ

CHAPTER LI

INFINITIVE: Active and Passive

Complementary and Object Infinitive

302.

Infinitive

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
<i>Pres.</i>	laudāre, to praise	laudārī, to be praised	
<i>Perf.</i>	laudāvisse, to have praised	laudātus esse, to have been praised	
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus esse, to be about to praise	laudātum īrī, to be about to be praised	

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> monēre	monērī	regere	regī
<i>Perf.</i> monuisse	monitus esse	rēxisse	rēctus esse
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus esse	monitum īrī	rēctūrus esse	rēctum īrī
<i>Pres.</i> capere	capī	audīre	audīrī
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	captus esse	audivisse	audītus esse
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse	captum īrī	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī

a. **laudātūrus** is the future active participle, declined like **bonus**, -a, -um, and may always be formed from the perfect passive participle by changing the ending -us to -ūrus, thus: perfect **laudātus**, future **laudātūrus**.

b. **laudātum** is the supine (to be explained later), which, in form, is just like the neuter of the perfect participle.

303. Prolative or Complementary Infinitive

The infinitive is commonly used as in English to complete the meaning of another verb, as: **pugnāre coepērunt**, *they began to fight*.

304. **RULE.** *The infinitive is used to complete the meaning of another verb.*

NOTE.—The prolative infinitive is usually placed before the verb on which it depends.

305.

The Object Infinitive

Verbs meaning *to say, to think, to know, to perceive*, in Latin as in English, often have a clause instead of a noun as object, as:

1. *Haec esse vĕra scĭmus,*

we know { *a. these (things) to be true, or*
b. that these things are true.

2. *Urbem captam esse vidĕō,*

I see { *a. the city to have been taken, or*
b. that the city has been taken.

3. *Putō amĭcum meum mox ventŭrum esse,*

I think that my friend will soon come.

a. After these verbs of *knowing, thinking, etc.*, the object clause in Latin has the verb in the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

b. In English the object clause is introduced by *that*, and the verb is generally in the indicative mood.

306. RULE. *The infinitive with subject accusative is used after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving.*

NOTE.—Translate the object infinitive as in *b* above, rarely as in *a*. It is sometimes well, however, to repeat the words as given in *a* till the meaning is clear and then translate as in *b*. And remember that in Latin there is no word for *that* as thus used.

307.

Indirect Discourse

DIRECT
STATEMENT

DIRECT QUOTATION

INDIRECT QUOTATION

1. *Veniam.*

2. *Dixit: "Veniam."*

3. *Dixit sē ventŭrum esse.*

I will come.

He said: "I will come."

He said that he would come.

a. Veniam in 1 is a simple direct statement. In 2 this statement is quoted directly without change. In 3 it is quoted, but changed to the construction of an object clause as explained in 305. Words or clauses quoted without change are called *direct quotations* or *direct discourse*.

b. But words or clauses which when quoted are changed to the construction required by the verb on which the quotation depends are called *indirect quotations* or *indirect discourse*.

308.

VOCABULARY

diligenter, carefully, attentively.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, think, consider.

iam, adv., now, already.

iudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, judge, decide, consider.

numquam, adv., never.

respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -sus, answer.

sapiēns, -entis, wise.

Sōcratēs, -is, m., Socrates.

EXERCISES

309. 1. Puella laudātur, laudāta est, laudābitur. 2. Existimāsne puellam laudārī, laudātam esse, laudātum iri? 3. Hostēs prōcēdunt, prōcessērunt, prōcēdent. 4. Quis dixit hostīs prōcēdere, prōcessisse, prōcessūrōs esse? 5. Putāsne urbem esse tūtā? 6. Custōdēs respondērunt sē¹ diligentissimē urbem custōditūrōs esse. 7. Nōne vidēs primam iam aciem prōcēdere atque tertiam aciem mox prōcessūrā esse? 8. Tam fortiter pugnāvimus ut nōn culpārī dēbeāmus. 9. Scīsne quis veniat? 10. Existimō frātre meum venīre. 11. Nōne iudicās Sōcratem fuisse sapientissimum hominum? 12. Illō² sapientiōrem hominem numquam fuisse iudicō.

310. 1. You are wise, I think that you are wise and brave. 2. I know that your friends will praise you. 3. I hope that you will be praised by all. 4. I will answer soon, he said that he¹ would answer soon. 5. He is writing, he says that he is writing, he says that he has already written a story. 6. He says that a letter has already been written by him.

¹ 248, d.

² 172, with note.

CHAPTER LII

USES OF THE PARTICIPLES

Dative with the Gerundive

311.

Participles

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
<i>Pres.</i> laud āns , <i>praising</i>	—		
<i>Perf.</i> —		laudāt us , <i>having been praised</i> , (or simply) <i>praised</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> laudāt ūrus , <i>about to praise</i>	—		

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> mon ēns		reg ēns	—
<i>Perf.</i> —	monit us	—	rēct us
<i>Fut.</i> monit ūrus		rēct ūrus	
<i>Pres.</i> capi ēns		audi ēns	
<i>Perf.</i> —	capt us	—	audīt us
<i>Fut.</i> capt ūrus		audīt ūrus	

GERUNDIVE

	laud andus , <i>to be praised</i>		
mon endus	reg endus	capi endus	audi endus

a. The present participle may be formed by changing the final -ō of the present indicative to -ēns¹ (-āns in the first conjugation), and is declined like **prūdēns** (459), except that the ablative singular ends in -e (460).

b. The perfect participle is given in the principal parts.

c. The future active participle is formed from the same stem as the perfect participle, but ends in -ūrus instead of -us.

d. The gerundive may be formed from the present indicative by changing final -ō to -endus¹ (-andus in the first conjugation).

¹ In the second conjugation, which has an -e- before the -ō, only -ns is added to form the present participle and -ndus to form the gerundive.

a. In translation it is best first to repeat the real meaning of the participle as given in (*a*), then when the meaning of the whole clause is clear, translate by the form which will best express the idea. The translations (*c*) and (*d*) are especially common.

b. Remember that the gerundive is always passive, and so with this construction all such expressions as *I must* and *I have to*, before being put into Latin, must be changed to the form given in 313, 3, (*a*).

315.

VOCABULARY

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
lead to, win over, influence.

ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
approach.

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus,
*give up; sē dēdere, to give
one's self up, to surrender.*

epistula, -ae, f., *letter.*

imperium, -ī, n., *rule, supreme
authority.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help,
assist.*

victor, -ōris, *victorious.*

EXERCISES

316. 1. Nōne vidēs hostīs fugientīs? 2. Mātūrā ut imperātōrem victōrem adpropinquantem videās. 3. Caesar mātūrāvit ut milītēs, quōs labōrantīs vidēbat, iuvāret. 4. Hostēs, celeriter gravibus vulneribus cōfectī, mox sē dēdidērunt. 5. Orgetorix ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus erat. 6. Orgetorix amicīs sē rēgnum obtentūrum esse dixit. 7. Orgetorix spē imperiī adductus erat ut coniūratiōnem faceret. 8. Nōne erat culpandus? 9. Tū laudandus es; illī culpandī sunt. 10. Nōbis castra movenda sunt. 11. Vōbis idem faciendum est. 12. Caesarī eōdem tempore signum tubā dandum erat atque aciēs instruenda. 13. Dixit sibi aciem instruendam esse. 14. Scīsne quid faciendum sit?

317. 1. The commander sends aid to the struggling soldiers. 2. The wounded soldier is to be praised. 3. The army, induced by the hope of victory, was about to attack the town most spiritedly. 4. We are not to be blamed. 5. Soldiers, you must defend this city (314, *b*) that it may not be captured by the enemy. 6. Do you not think that this city is to be defended?

CHAPTER LIII

GERUND AND SUPINE: Formation and Uses

318.	<i>Gerund</i>	<i>Supine</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	laud andum , <i>praising</i>	laudātum, <i>to praise</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	laud andī , <i>of praising</i>			
<i>Dat.</i>	laud andō , <i>for praising</i>			
<i>Abl.</i>	laud andō , <i>by praising</i>	laudātū, <i>to praise</i>		
	<i>Gerund</i>			
<i>Acc.</i>	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
<i>Gen.</i>	monendī	regendī	capiendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō
<i>Abl.</i>	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō
	<i>Supine</i>			
<i>Acc.</i>	monitum	rēctum	captum	audītum
<i>Abl.</i>	monitū	rēctū	captū	audītū

The Gerund

a. The gerund is formed like the future passive participle (311, *d*), but it is a verbal noun used only in the neuter singular and has no nominative case. In the other cases it is governed by the same rules as other nouns, thus: **studium pugnandī**, *the desire of fighting*; **puerī sē currendō exercent**, *boys exercise themselves by running*.

b. The gerund as a verbal noun may take an object like a verb, as: *cōnsilium urbem capiendī*, *the plan of taking the city*. But instead of the gerund with an object the gerundive is more commonly used. The gerundive agrees with the noun like an adjective. The difference between the two constructions may be seen by the following:

319.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

<i>Acc.</i> Orgetorix dēligitur	{ ad rēs cōficiendās. }	{ For completing matters Orgetorix is chosen. }
<i>Gen.</i> Studium	{ urbem videndī. }	{ The desire of seeing the city. urbis videndae. }
<i>Dat.</i> Tempus nōn datur	{ rēbus cōstituendīs. }	{ Time is not given for arranging matters. }
<i>Abl.</i> Tempus sūmō	{ scrībendō epistulās. }	{ I spend time in writing scrībendīs epistulis. }
Lēgātī missī sunt	{ dē auxiliō petendō. }	{ Envoys were sent with reference to seeking help. }

a. Observe that the accusative with *ad* denotes *purpose*.

NOTE. — The gerund with an object is used only in the genitive, and in the ablative *without a preposition*. Even in these cases the gerundive is more common.

The Supine

320. The supine has the same stem as the perfect participle, but it is a verbal noun, used only in two cases; and these are little used, each case being limited strictly to one particular use, as in the following:

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Lēgātī vērērunt pācem petītum, *the envoys came to seek peace.*
2. Difficile dictū est, *it is difficult to say.*

321. 1. RULE. *The supine in -um is used only after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

2. RULE. *The supine in -ū is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of specification (158).*

322.

VOCABULARY

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, se-
lect, choose.

imprudentia, -ae, f., want of
foresight, indiscretion.

neque (shortened to **nec** before
most consonants), *conj., and*
not; neque . . . neque, nei-
ther . . . nor.

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres-
sus, press hard, crush.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, speak,
plead, entreat.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, re-
quest, ask.

potestās, -ātis, f., power, chance,
opportunity.

spatium, -ī, n., space, time.

subitō, adv., suddenly.

sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
furnish.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
transport, carry over.

trīduum, -ī, n., three days.

EXERCISES

323. 1. Spēs urbem capiendī dēlēta est. **2.** Hōc optimum factū est. **3.** Dīviciācus sōlus ad senātum vēnit auxilium postulātum. **4.** Subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium cēpērunt. **5.** Nāvīs octōgintā satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat. **6.** Tam breve spatium fuit ut eis rēbus cōstituendīs tempus nōn darētur. **7.** Aliī tēlīs coniciendīs, aliī lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs, iuvābant. **8.** Lēgātī in pāce petendā multitudinem imprudentiā culpāvērunt. **9.** Ā Caesare petēbant ut sibi potestātem faceret lēgātōs mittendī. **10.** Hostibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī¹ dandum² exīstimābat. **11.** Itaque neque cōnsiliī habendī neque arma

¹ 188.

² Here **dandum** is for **dandum esse**. After the future active and future passive participles in object clauses (305, 306) **esse** is often omitted.

capiendī spatium datum est. 12. Neque ōrandō impe-
trant.

324. 1. The difficulty of waging war, by fighting, in punishing this man. 2. Night puts an end to (makes the end of) the fighting. 3. For¹ completing these things three days are given. 4. Deputies have come with reference to (dē, 269) seeking peace. 5. The desire of defending the state is better than the hope of conquering an enemy. 6. They send deputies to Cæsar to seek help. 7. This is easy to do.

CHAPTER LIV

REVIEW OF LAUDŌ: Active with Synopsis

325. Review the active voice of laudō (473), and learn the synopsis (474).

READING LESSON

326. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finis Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lēnitāte ita ut oculis² in utram³ partem fluat⁴ difficile vīsū sit. Trāns id flūmen Helvētiī ratibus² ac lintribus iūctis omnīs cōpiās suās trānsportāre parābant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trīs iam partis cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse,⁵ quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse,⁵ dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris contēdit, et mox ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum trānsportāta erat.

¹ 319, a.

² 48.

³ 200.

⁴ 287.

⁵ 306.

CHAPTER LV

REVIEW OF LAUDŌ: Passive with Synopsis

327. Review the passive voice of *laudō* (473), and learn the passive synopsis (474).

READING LESSON

328. Eōs impeditōs, quod dē Caesaris adventū nōndum cōgnōverant, oppressit et magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī¹ statim fugere coepērunt atque in proximās silvās sēsē recēpērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus patrum nostrōrum memoriā² L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita accidit ut eadem civitās, quae multīs annīs³ ante exercitum Rōmānum magnā calamitāte adfēcerat, ab ipsō Caesare maiōre caede superārētur. Populō Rōmānō hāc victōriā⁴ nihil fuit grātius.

CHAPTER LVI

REVIEW OF MONEŌ (*complete*)

329. Review *moneō* active and passive (476), and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

330. Cum hōc proelium factum esset, ut ad reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum perveniret, pontem in Ararī facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi repentinō eius adventū

¹ See foot-note 1, page 98.

² 219.

³ 180.

⁴ 172 with note.

commōti erant, cum¹ id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcisset. Itaque lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lēgātīōnis. Dīvicō princeps fuit. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit : “ Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, Helvētiī manēbunt ubi cōstitueris. Sīn nōbiscum bellum gerēs, tibi virtūs Helvētiōrum dēspicienda nōn est, nec tua magnopere virtūs laudanda est. Nam Helvētiōs oppugnāvisti, cum aliī alterā in parte flūminis essent. Nōs magis² virtūte quam dolō contendimus.”

CHAPTER LVII

REVIEW OF REGŌ AND CAPIŌ (*complete*)

331. Review *regō* (477) and *capiō* (488) entire, and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

332. His Caesar ita respondit : “ Mihi minus dubitātiōnis³ datur quod eās rēs quās commemorāstis⁴ memoriā teneō.⁵ Illā vetere calamitāte graviter commōtus sum, quod nūllō maleficiō⁶ populi Rōmānī accidit. Nōn cavēbat,⁷ sed eō⁸ dēceptus erat, quod nūlla erat causa bellī, neque sine causā bellum timendum⁹ putāvit. Tamen veterēs iniūriæ neglegendæ sunt. Sed hōc certē, quod sum dictūrus, neque neglegendum neque praetermittendum est. Sine meā voluntāte iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis,⁴ atque Haeduōs vexāstis⁴ eōrumque agrōs vāstāstis.⁴ Nunc inso-

¹ Since.² magis, rather (194).³ 187, 188.⁴ commemorāstis is for commemorāvistis. In the perfect *v* often drops out, and contraction occurs.⁵ I hold in memory = I remember.⁶ 141.⁷ They (populus Rōmānus) were not on their guard.⁸ eō . . . quod, by this . . . because = from the fact, that.⁹ See foot-note 2, p. 133.

lenter victōriā exsultātis. 'Sed vāna erit vestra spēs. Nam saepe deī hominibus secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdunt, quō¹ gravius ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant.'



JUMENTUM

CHAPTER LVIII

REVIEW OF AUDIO (complete)

Ablative Absolute and Relative Clause of Purpose

333. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. His rēbus cōstitūtis, prōcēdēmus, *these matters having been arranged, we will proceed.*
2. Nūllō hoste prohibente, Caesar exercitum redūxit, *no enemy hindering, Cæsar led back the army.*

a. In these phrases, **his rēbus cōstitūtis**, *these matters having been arranged*, and **nūllō hoste prohibente**, *no enemy hindering*, the Latin nouns **hoste** and **rēbus** are not subjects or objects of any verb, but are used independently just like the corresponding English nouns *enemy* and *matters*. In English this use of a noun with the participle is called *nominative absolute*.

In Latin it is called *ablative absolute*. In Latin as in English a participle or adjective is used with the noun.

334. RULE. *A noun or pronoun with a participle or adjective agreeing with it is often used independently in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of some other action.*

¹ **quō**, *by which* = *in order that*, is generally used in place of **ut** in a purpose clause when a comparative follows.

335.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Dux hominēs mīsit, quī victōriam nūntiāvērunt, the**
leader sent men, who announced the victory.
2. **Dux hominēs mīsit quī victōriam nūntiārent, the**
leader sent men who should announce (that they
might announce or to announce) the victory.

The relative clause in 1 states a fact and so takes the indicative (277, a); in 2 it denotes purpose, just as *ut* (272, 273) does, and takes the subjunctive for the same reason.

336. RULE. *A relative clause denoting purpose takes the subjunctive.*

337. Review *audiō* active and passive (479), and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

338. "Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur utī¹ ea quae dicitis vōs factūrōs² intellegam, vōbiscum pācem faciam." Divicō respondit : Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus³ suis institūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint;⁴ eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō,⁵ discessit. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque, quem ex omnī prōvinciā habēbat, praemittit quī videant⁶ quās in partis hostēs iter faciant.

EXERCISES

339. 1. No hostages having been given, Cæsar determined⁷ to prolong⁸ the war. **2.** For without hostages he thought peace was not to be made. **3.** But this day, no

¹ Before a vowel the form *utī* is sometimes used instead of *ut*.

² See foot-note 2, p. 133.

³ **Maiores** sometimes means *greater in age, older*; the plural, **maiōrēs**, means *elders, ancestors*.

⁴ **Cōnsuērint** is for **cōnsuēverint**. Cf. foot-note 4, p. 136.

⁵ **334.** ⁶ **336.** ⁷ **cōnstituō.** ⁸ **prōdūcō.**

enemy approaching,¹ he remained in camp. 4. When he saw² that the enemy had broken³ camp, he sent men to ascertain⁴ where they were.⁵

CHAPTER LIX

SUM, POSSUM, PRŌSUM

Dative with Compounds and Dative of Service

340. Learn the inflection of **sum**, **possum**, and **prōsum** (480).

Dative with Compounds

341. RULE. *Many verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and a very few with circum and con, take an indirect object in the dative, as :*

1. **Labiēnus legiōnī praefuit**, *Labienus was in charge of the legion.*
2. **Pācem bellō antepōnō**, *I place peace before war.*
3. **Equitēs exercituī praemisit**, *he sent the cavalry ahead of the army.*

a. If the verb is transitive as in 2 and 3, it may take an accusative of the direct object in addition to the dative of the indirect. The direct object is also frequently used alone, thus : **Equitēs praemisit**, *he sent the cavalry ahead.*

Dative of Service

342. RULE. *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves, as :*

1. **Nōbīs sunt auxiliō**, *they are (for) a help to us.*
2. **Peditātum castris praesidiō misit**, *he sent the infantry (for) as a protection to the camp.*

¹ **adpropinquō**, -āre, etc.

² *had seen.*

³ *moved (moveō).*

⁴ **cōgnōscō**.

⁵ 287.

a. With the dative of service another dative of the *person to whom* (or *thing to which*) is very common, as *nōbīs* and *castrīs* in 1 and 2.

343.

VOCABULARY

ad-sum, *be near, be present, help.*

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place before, prefer.*

castellum, -ī, n., *fortress.*

com-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *commit, intrust; proelium committere, to begin battle.*

dē-sum, *be lacking, fail.*

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by storm, capture.*

in-firmus, -a, -um, *weak.*

ob-sum, *be in the way of, hinder, injure.*

prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place in charge of.*

prae-sum, *be present, be at the head of, have charge of, command.*

prō-sum, *be helpful to, benefit.*

subsidiū, -ī, n., *relief, assistance.*

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage.*

EXERCISES

344. 1. Tempus **proeliī** committendi adest. 2. Dux suis aderat atque eis erat auxiliō. 3. Hae rēs ad nāvis reficiendās erant ūsuī. 4. Hās rēs magnō sibi ūsuī fore existimābat. 5. Nullō hoste¹ prohibente, legiōnēs in hiberna perducere poterat. 6. Labiēnum hibernis praeposuit. 7. Cum tibi hae rēs prōsint, mihi obsunt. 8. Hic vir gravi volnere² tam infirmus erat, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset. 9. Diūtius nostrī sē dēfendere nōn poterant, quod iam nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla eis deērant. 10. Cum Crassus, qui equitatūi praeerat, nostram prīmam aciem premī vidisset, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris subsidiō misit. 11. Hostēs quam celerrimē³ contendērunt ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Titūrius, expugnārent.

345. 1. Hold out till⁴ I can (may be able to) come to you. 2. This will be a great help to you. 3. Will you be able to hold out longer? 4. Three cohorts had been left as

¹ 334.² 141.³ 196.⁴ dum.

a protection to the camp. 5. Friendship is to be placed before praise. 6. Lælius said that he placed friendship before all things.

CHAPTER LX

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

346. Learn the conjugation of *volō, nōlō, mālō* (481).

347. *Nōlī* (plur. *nōlītē*) with the infinitive takes the place of the imperative with a negative, as : *nōlī timēre*, *do not* (be unwilling to) *fear*.

348.

VOCABULARY

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessū-
rus, withdraw.

inquit, said he, a defective verb used only after one or two words of a direct quotation.

laccessō, -ere, laccessivī, -sītus,
harass, attack, provoke.

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī or quae-
sī, -sītus, inquire, ask.

quamdiū, adv., as long as.
sīn, conj., but if.

trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, hand
over, give up, surrender.

EXERCISES

349. 1. *Velle, nōlēs, mālucrat.* 2. *Volumus, nōluistis, māluerint.* 3. *Ex lēgātīs quaesivit cūr ad sē vēnissent et quid vellent.* 4. *Cum ōrandō impetrāre nōn possent, tamen hostibus sē dēdere nōlēbant.* 5. *Tēlis sē dēfendere, quamdiū poterant, māluerunt.* 6. *Nōlite arma trādere, nisi interficī vultis.* 7. *Tū¹ manē, sī vīs, ego discēdere mālō.* 8. *Quis diligī quam timērī nōn māvult?* 9. *Ab Ariovistō, cum in conloquium venīre nōllet, Caesar postulāvit nē cōpiās suās trāns Rhēnum trādūceret.* 10. "*Nōlī,*" inquit, "*Hae-*
duōs sociōsque eōrum iniūriā laccessere." 11. *Redde obsidēs*

quōs habēs. 12. Si id ita facere vis, mihi¹ amicitia tēcum erit."

350. 1. We ought to be willing, they seem to have been willing. 2. Do not fear, but come to me at once. 3. All men prefer to be praised rather than blamed. 4. I cannot understand why the envoys did not wish to come. 5. When the legions were unwilling to advance farther, he asked why they feared. 6. If you wish, I will send a messenger to you that you may know what I have done.

CHAPTER LXI

EŌ AND ADEŌ

Rules for names of cities, and domus and rūs

351. Learn the conjugation of eŏ and adeŏ (482).

352. *a.* The names of cities and a few other words have a special case, which indicates location and is therefore called the *locative* case.

b. The locative singular, in the first and second declensions, has the same form as the genitive, and in the third declension ends in ī or e; in the plural the endings in the locative of all declensions are the same as in the dative or ablative.

353. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

ABLATIVE WITH THE PREPOSITION *in*

LOCATIVE

1. { *in urbe*, in the city.
 in Ītaliā, in Italy.
 in silvis, in the woods.

2. { *Rōmae*, at or in Rome.
 Ephesi, at or in Ephesus.
 Carthāgini, at or in Carthage
 domi, at home.
 rūri, in the country.
 Athēnis, at Athens.

ACCUSATIVE WITH THE PREPOSITION **ad** OR **in**

3. { **ad** or **in** *urbem*, *to or into the city*.
 { **ad** or **in** *Ītaliā*, *to or into Italy*.

ACCUSATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

4. { **Rōmam**, *to or into Rome*.
 { **domum**, *home*.

ABLATIVE WITH THE PREPOSITION **ab**, **dē**, OR **ex**

5. { **ab**, **dē**, **ex** *urbe*, *from the city*.
 { **ab**, **dē**, **ex** *Ītaliā*, *from Italy*.

ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

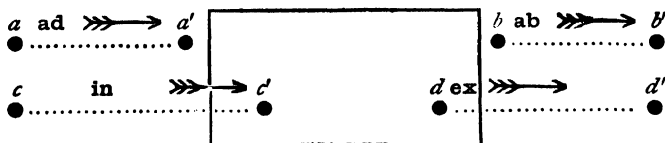
6. { **Rōmā**, *from Rome*.
 { **domō**, *from home*.

354. Rules for names of cities and *domus* and *rūs* :

1. Place **where** is expressed by the locative.
2. Place **to which** is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.
3. Place **from which** is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

a. In all designations of place *not names of cities*, etc., the place *where* is expressed by the ablative with **in**, place *to which* by the accusative with **ad** or **in**, place *from which* by the ablative with **ab** (*ā*), **dē**, or **ex** (*ē*).

NOTE 1. — The difference between **ad** (*to, towards, near*) with its opposite **ab** (*from, away from*) and **in** (*to, into*) with its opposite **ex** (*from, out of*) is clearly shown by the following diagram :



NOTE 2. — The prepositions **in** (*in, into*) and **sub** (*under*) are used with the accusative to express the place *towards which* something *moves*, the ablative to express the place *where* something *is* or *is done*, thus :

a **in** (*with acc.*) a'

b **in** (*with abl.*)

c **sub** (*with acc.*) c'

d **sub** (*with abl.*)

355.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, pl., f., *Athens*.
aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*.

comperiō or **reperiō**, -ire, **reperi**, *repertus*, *found out*.

insula, -ae, f., *island*.

nātālis, -e, *of birth*; **diēs nātālēs**, *birth days*.

negōtium, -i, n., *business*; *instructions*.

red-eō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, *go back, return*.

re-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send back*.

rūs, **rūris**, n., *country, farm*.

statuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, *decide, determine*.

trāns-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus, *cross*.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*; **tūtō**, adv., *safely*.

vadum, -i, n., *ford*; **vadō**, *by a ford or by fording*.

EXERCISES

356. 1. **Ī**, **itō**; **aut** **prōcēdite** **aut** **redite**. 2. **Illud flūmen vadō trānsitur**, **hōc nāvibus trānsibitur**. 3. **Nostri hostis flūmen trānseuntis oppugnāvērunt**. 4. **Puer rūri in Ītaliā nātus erat**; **Corinthi**, **Athēnis**, **Rōmae**, **habitāverat**. 5. **Cum Rōmā redisset**, **rūs iit habitātum**.¹ 6. **Rūri quam in urbe habitāre mālēbat**. 7. **Redeuntibus annis**,² **diēs nātālēs redeunt**. 8. **Equitēs subsidiō suis iērunt**. 9. **Bellō**³ **cōfectō**, **imperātor cum exercitū domum rediit**. 10. **Dat negōtium huic ut quās possit adeat civitātis**. 11. **Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum**. 12. **Itaque pontem fēcit quō tūtius trānsiret**.³ 13. **Est aqua sub ponte**. 14. **Sub pontem fluit flūmen**.

357. 1. He is going, he will go; he says that he is going, that he will go. 2. This boy had gone to the country and was about to return home that he might be a help to his father. 3. Do you wish to return with me? 4. They have gone to the country, to the city, to Rome, to Italy. 5. They are about to return from the country, from the city, from Rome, from Italy. 6. They have lived in the country, in the city, in Rome, in Italy.

¹ 321.² 334.³ Foot-note 1, p. 137.

CHAPTER LXII

FERŌ AND FĪŌ

Dative with Special Verbs

358. Learn the conjugation of *ferō* (483) and *fīō* (484).

359. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Eīs omnia crēdit, he trusts all things to them.*
2. *Eīs crēdit, he trusts (gives credit to), or believes them.*
3. *Nōbīs serviunt, they serve (are servants to) us.*

a. Some verbs, as shown by examples 1 and 2, take the dative of the person and accusative of the thing, or the dative of the person alone; and some, as *serviunt* in 3, according to their real meaning are intransitive in Latin and take the dative only, although the English verbs by which they are translated are transitive and have the direct object.

360. RULE. *Most verbs meaning to favour, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

361.

VOCABULARY

ad-ferō, -ferre, adtulī, adlātus,
bring to, bring.

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus,
trust, believe, credit.

ef-ferō (ex + ferō) (267, a), effere,
extulī, ēlātus, carry out,
bring out.

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, go out.

in-ferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus,
bring upon, make upon, inflict.

pareō, -ēre, -uī, paritūrus, obey,
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suā-
sus, persuade, convince.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus,
bring back, report.

resistō, -ere, resistī, —, re-
sist.

serviō, -īre, -ivī, -itūrus, serve,
be servant to, give heed to.

voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure.

EXERCISES

362. 1. Fac hōc, facitō illud, id fieri pōtest. 2. Disce diligenter ut sapiēns fiās. 3. Fer nōbīs auxilium, nōlī patriae¹ bellum inferre. 4. Discite fortiter ferre id quod ferendum est. 5. Superanda omnia ferendō sunt. 6. Imperātor exercituī imperat; militēs imperātōrī pārēbunt. 7. Omnēs gentēs illō tempore servire populō Rōmānō quam imperāre aliīs mālēbant. 8. Orgetorix civitāti persuāsit ut dē finibus suis exirent ut finitimis bellum inferrent. 9. Omne frūmentum sēcum domō extulērunt, quod posterō annō domum redire nōlēbant. 10. Dux hominēs praemisit quī, quid fieret,² cōgnōscerent³ et ad sē referrent.

363. 1. This man has been made consul; the boy will become a man. 2. Who will bring us help? are you bringing help? 3. Obey the laws, thou shalt obey, we trust you. 4. Who is able to persuade us? 5. Did you resist the enemy's fierce attack? 6. By whom was this war most cruelly brought upon the country?

CHAPTER LXIII

DEPONENT VERBS

The Ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc.

364. Learn the conjugation of the Deponent Verbs (485, 486 with *a-c*).

Deponent verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meanings of the active, thus :

Stellās mīrāmur, *we wonder at the stars.*

Nautane mare verētur, *does the sailor dread the sea?*

¹ 341.

² 287.

³ 336.

365. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Gladiis ūtimur**, *we use* (we help ourselves by) *our swords*.
2. **His rebus fruimur**, *we enjoy* (we enjoy ourselves by means of) *these things*.

NOTE. — These verbs with a few others, from their real meaning, take the ablative of means, but the English verbs by which they are more simply translated have a direct object.

366. RULE. *The verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor take the ablative.*

367. VOCABULARY

adorior , -irī, adortus sum , <i>attack.</i>	potior , -irī, potitus sum , <i>get possession of.</i>
causa , -ae, f., <i>cause</i> ; causā , ablative placed after a genitive, <i>for the sake of.</i>	proficīscor , -ī, profectus sum , <i>start, set out.</i>
fruor , -ī, fructus sum , <i>enjoy.</i>	timeō , -ēre, -uī, —, <i>fear, be afraid of.</i>
fungor , -ī, fūctus sum , <i>perform</i> (a duty).	ūtor , -ī, ūsus sum , <i>use, adopt.</i>
impedīmentum , -ī, n., <i>hindrance</i> ; plu., <i>baggage-trains.</i>	vereor , -ērī, veritus sum , <i>fear, dread, reverence.</i>
mīror , -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>wonder, wonder at; admire.</i>	vēscor , -ī, —, <i>eat.</i>

EXERCISES

368. 1. Sequī, secūtus esse vidētur, sē secūtūrum esse dicit. **2.** Tū proficīscere, ego sequar. **3.** Sequēbāminī, cūr secūtī sitis nōn intellegō. **4.** Finem sequendī fēcīt, labōribus fūctus est. **5.** Eis, quae terra et mare ferunt, vēscimur. **6.** Lūcem, quā fruimur, mīrāmur. **7.** Multi Caesarem amicitiae causā secūtī sunt. **8.** Veritī periculum, domum redire volēbant. **9.** Eius rei quae causa esset mīrātus, ex ipsis quaesiit. **10.** Militēs nōn sē hostis verērī sed magnitūdinem silvārum timēre dicēbant. **11.** Cohortātus suōs, subitō ūnam partem adortus est cum ei quī flūmen trānsis-

sent suis auxilium ferre nōn possent. 12. Helvētiī domō proficiscēbantur ut tōtius Galliae imperiō potirentur.

369. 1. We will follow, they say that they will follow. 2. I will start; you follow me. 3. This army is to be followed by us. 4. We have got possession of the enemy's camp and baggage. 5. We enjoy the light. 6. They used their own weapons more freely. 7. He urges the soldiers not to (that they may not) fear the enemy.

CHAPTER LXIV

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Passive of Intransitive Verbs

370. Learn what is said about impersonal verbs in 488.

371. *a.* When the active voice is changed to the passive, that which is the direct object of the verb in the active becomes the subject in the passive, as :

ACTIVE
Hominem vidēō,
I see the man.

PASSIVE
Homō ā mē vidētur,
The man is seen by me.

b. If the verb in the active has no object, or only an indirect object, it can have no subject in the passive ; but in Latin such verbs are sometimes used impersonally in the passive, as :

ACTIVE
1. **Currit, he runs.**

PASSIVE
1. **Curritur** (it is run), *there is running.*

2. **Tibi crēdō, I trust you.**

2. **Tibi ā mē crēditur, you are trusted by me.**

NOTE. — If in the active the verb governs the dative (360), the dative is retained in the passive and may often be translated as the subject in English, as in 2 above.

372. RULE. *Intransitive verbs are used only impersonally in the passive.*

373.

VOCABULARY

oñstat, -äre, - *it is evident.*

fit, fieri, factum est (as impersonal), *it comes about, it happens.*

hiemō, -äre, -ävi, -ätus, pass *the winter, winter; hiemätur, the winter is passed.*

hiems, -is, f., winter.

licet, -äre, licuit or licitum est, it is permitted, one may, etc.

morior, mori, mortuus sum, die.

necesse, indecl., adj., necessary, inevitable.

noceō, -äre, nocui, nociturus, harm, injure.

oportet, -äre, -uit, it is necessary, one ought.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., disturbance, alarm.

prō-videō, -äre, -vidi, -visus, provide.

EXERCISES

374. 1. Pugnābitur, ācrit̄er pugnātum est, accidēbat ut pugnārētur. 2. Ad castra eunt, ad castra itur, ad castra nōbis eundum est,¹ quis dicit nōbis ad castra eundum esse? 3. Tibi nōn nocēbō, tibi ā mē nocēbitur, eis nōn nocēbitur. 4. Tibi persuādēre nōn possum, tibi persuādērī nōn poterat. 5. Hīs resisti nōn poterat. 6. Tibi ire licet, tibi ire licēbit, rogat ut sibi domum ire liceat. 7. Omnibus mori necesse est. 8. Tē rūre redire oportet.² 9. Militibus nōn cōnstābat quid fieri oportēret. 10. Nam in hīs locīs, ubi hiemārī oportēbat, frūmentum in³ hiemem prōvisum nōn erat. 11. Itaque magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.

375. 1. I will not harm you, you will not be harmed by me. 2. You are trusted by all, do you trust these men? 3. The Helvetii had too narrow borders and were hemmed in by very high mountains. 4. Because of these things it

¹ 488, b.

² It is necessary that you should return, or, you ought to return.

³ In before a word referring to the future often means for.

came about that they wished to go from home. 5. They asked Cæsar that it might be allowed them to go through the province.

CHAPTER LXV

TWO ACCUSATIVES AND ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Reading Lesson

376.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Nātūra nōs multa docuit**, *nature has taught us many things.*
2. **Haedui Caesarem auxilium rogant**, *the Haedui ask help from Cæsar.*
3. **Haedui ā Caesare auxilium petunt**, *the Haedui seek help from Cæsar.*

377. RULE. *Verbs of asking and teaching, and some verbs of demanding, take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.*

a. But **petō** always, and **postulō** generally, requires the preposition **ā** (**ab**), and **quaerō ex** (**ab**, **dē**), with the *ablative of the person*.

378.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Mē metū liberābis**, *you will free me from fear.*
2. **Castra ex eō locō movent**, *they move the camp from this place.*
3. **Equus aquā caret**, *the horse lacks water.*

379. RULE. *After words denoting separation, privation, and want, the ablative is used.*

NOTE. — In 1 no preposition is required. No precise rule can be given for this. But generally, when real *movement, space, or distance* is involved, as in 2, the preposition is required, while with merely figurative separation and want, as in 1 and 3, the preposition is not required.

380. **Opus** and **ūsus**, meaning *need*, take the ablative, as : **auxiliō opus est**, *there is need of help.*

READING LESSON (*continued from 338*).

381. Nostri equitēs, cupidius¹ novissimum² agmen inse-
cūti, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium com-
mittunt. Itaque Helvētii nostrō impetui audācius resistere
ausi sunt.³ Caesar calamitātem veritus suōs ā proeliō con-
tinēbat. Eō tempore satis esse arbitrābātur hostis rapinīs
prohibēre atque eōs lacessere nē agrōs sociōrum popu-
lārentur. Interim Caesarī frūmentō opus erat. Itaque
Haeduōs frūmentum, quod polliciti erant, flāgitābat. Nam
frūmentō,⁴ quod flūmine⁵ Ararī subvēxerat, minus ūti pote-
rat,⁶ quod iter ab Ararī Helvētii āverterant, ā quibus dis-
cēdere nōlēbat.

EXERCISES

382. 1. The enemy's cavalry at this time resisted the
Romans very boldly. 2. And Cæsar feared disaster, for his
cavalry needed grain. 3. But, since the enemy had turned
their course from the river, he could not use his own
grain. 4. And so, in order that he might be freed from
anxiety,⁷ he asked for grain from the Hædui.

NOTE. — The words needed in this exercise, except those repeatedly used
before, are to be found in 376, 378, and 381.

¹ 178, *a.*

² *newest = last, rear.*

³ 487.

⁴ 366.

⁵ 48.

⁶ **minus . . . poterat**, *he was less able.*

⁷ *anxiety = fear = metus.*



EARLY ROMAN COIN

CHAPTER LXVI

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Cognate Accusative

383. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Cōnsilia quae cēpimus hostibus ēnūntiantur*, the plans which we have formed are reported to the enemy.
2. *Fugitīvus dixit cōnsilia quae cēpissēmus hostibus ēnūntiārī*, the fugitive said that the plans which we had formed were reported to the enemy.

a. The verb *ēnūntiantur*, which is in the principal clause of 1, becomes *ēnūntiārī* in 2, according to 306, but *cēpimus*, which is in the subordinate clause of 1, becomes subjunctive in 2.

384. RULE. *A subordinate clause in indirect discourse (307, a and b) takes the subjunctive.*

385. Cognate Accusative

1. *Vitam bonam vivit*, he lives a good life.
2. *Eōs hōc monēo*, I warn them this = (thus), or I give them this (kind of) warning.

a. In 1 the noun and verb have a similar, or kindred, meaning. Such an accusative is therefore called the *cognate accusative*, from the Latin word *cōgnātus*, *kindred, connected with*.

b. In 2 *hōc* does not refer to some outside object, but merely limits the idea contained within the verb itself and is closely connected with it, and so is called *cognate accusative*.

c. A cognate accusative, therefore, is either a noun having the same or kindred meaning with the verb, or a neuter pronoun or adjective limiting the idea expressed in the verb itself.

386. With *valeō*, *be strong, have influence*, and with *possum*, *be able, have power*, the neuter accusatives, *nihil, quid, quan-*

tum, and **multum** (**plūs**, **plūrimum**, or **minus**, **minimum**), are quite common as cognate, or adverbial, accusatives, as :

1. **Quid potest?** *what power has he, or what can he do?*
2. **Nihil potest**, *he has no power, or he can do nothing.*
3. **Multum (plūs, plūrimum) potest**, *he has much (more, most, or very great) power.*

READING LESSON

387. Ubi sē diūtius¹ dūci² intellēxit, eōrum principēs convocāvit. In³ hīs erant Diviciācus et Liscus, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat. Graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, tam propinquīs hostibus,⁴ ab eīs nōn frumentum cōferātur; praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō⁵ etiam gravius queritur. Tum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus respondet: esse nōn nullōs⁶ quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre nē⁷ frumentum cōferant, quod dēbeant. Ab eisdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse.

EXERCISES

388. 1. The Hædui put Cæsar off, although he had undertaken the war at⁸ their entreaties. 2. The people were influenced by the reckless talk of the leaders, who had very great power. 3. Liscus said that these leaders had more influence than he himself. 4. Although Liscus held⁹ the highest office, he could not restrain these men.

NOTE. — Find the words and phrases for this exercise in 387.

¹ 178, a. ² *is being drawn (on) = put off.* ⁸ *among.*

⁴ *The enemy (being) so near (334).* ⁵ 180. ⁶ *not none = some.*

⁷ **nē . . . cōferant**, *so that they may not bring = from bringing (277, b).*

⁸ **at** = *because of* (141). ⁹ Use the proper form of **praesum**.

CHAPTER LXVII

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY

389. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Cupidus pugnandī est, he is desirous of fighting.*
2. *Rel mīlītāris perītus est, he is experienced in military affairs.*

390. RULE. *Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites, govern the genitive.*

391. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Est summā virtūte, he is [a man] (with, possessed of) of the greatest courage.

392. RULE. *A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the ablative to denote quality. Compare 136.*

READING LESSON

393. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed quod, plūribus¹ praesentibus, eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, ex sōlō quaerit ea quae in conventū dixerat. Reperit ipsum esse² Dumnorīgem, summā audaciā, cupidum rērum novārum; ³ multōs annōs magnum numerum equitātūs circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domi sed etiam apud finitimās civitātis plūrimū posse.² Praetereā fāvit Helvētiīs⁴ Dumnorīx, quod huius potentiae causā ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēbat; ōderat Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū⁵ potentia eius minor erat. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar initium² fugae, quae paucis ante diēbus facta esset,⁶ factum esse² ā Dumnorīge qui equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haedui miserant, praeerat.

¹ Too many (178, a; and 334) being present = while too many were present.

² 306.

³ rērum novārum, new things = change, revolution.

⁴ 360.

⁵ 141.

⁶ 384.

EXERCISES

394. 1. Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, was a man of great boldness. 2. Cæsar, desirous of finding out why Dumnorix favoured the Helvetii. inquired from Liscus alone. 3. He learned that Dumnorix for the sake of power had a wife from the Helvetii. 4. By the coming of the Romans Dumnorix thought that this power would be less.

CHAPTER LXVIII

VERBS OF FEARING AND INDIRECT REQUESTS

Hortatory Subjunctive

395. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Timeō nē veniat, I fear that (lest) he will (may) come.*
2. *Timeō ut veniat, I fear that he will (may) not come.*

396. RULE. *Verbs of fearing take the subjunctive with nē or ut.*

a. With verbs of fearing *nē* is translated *that*, or *lest*, and *ut* *that not*.

Hortatory Subjunctive

397. The subjunctive is used in exhortations, corresponding to the English *let*, as:

veniat, let him come; nē eāmus, let us not go.

398.

Requests

DIRECT

INDIRECT

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Venī, come.</i> | 1. <i>Eī persuāsīt ut venīret, he persuaded him to come.</i> |
| 2. <i>Nōlī venīre, do not come.</i> | 2. <i>Eum cohortātus est nē venīret, he urged him not to come.</i> |
| 3. <i>Veniat, let him come.</i> | 3. <i>Postulābat ut venīret, he requested that he should come.</i> |

a. DEFINITION. An indirect request is a subordinate clause following a verb expressing or implying a command or request.

399. RULE. *The verb of an indirect request is in the subjunctive.*

READING LESSON

400. His¹ cōgnitis — praesertim cum² Dumnorix sē suspiciōne liberāre nōn posset — Caesar satis esse causae³ arbitrābātur quā rē⁴ in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iubēret. Sed hōc facere nōlēbat; nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et per interpretem, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur. Ostendit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorige sint dicta; petit atque hortātur ut sine offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā,⁵ statuatur vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

EXERCISES

401. 1. I fear that he will do this, I fear that he will not do this. 2. Let him do this, let us not do this. 3. Do this, do not do this. 4. He persuaded him to do this, he exhorted them not to do this. 5. Caesar urged the state to punish Dumnorix. 6. He himself did not wish to hurt the feelings of Diviciacus.

¹ these (things).

² since.

³ 188.

⁴ on account of which thing = wherefore, why.

⁵ the cause having been learned = after investigating the case (334).

CHAPTER LXIX

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. READING LESSON

402.

Indefinite Pronouns

MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Quis	qua	quid (<i>quod</i>), <i>any</i> , used after sī , nisi , nē , and num , is declined like the interrogative quis (233 or 471), except that the feminine singular and neuter plural have qua instead of quae .
Quisquam		quidquam (<i>quicquam</i>), <i>any, any at all</i> , used in negative clauses, or clauses implying a negative, occurs only in the singular masculine and neuter.
Aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (<i>aliquod</i>), <i>some, some one</i> (but no one in particular), is declined like quis above. (See 472.)
Quisque	quaeque	quidque (<i>quodque</i>), <i>each, every, every one</i> , is declined like quis , with the suffix -que added.
Quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (<i>quoddam</i>), <i>a certain, some one</i> (whom the writer has in mind), is declined regularly (472).
Quīvīs	quaevis	quidvis (<i>quodvis</i>) <i>any one you wish,</i>
Quilibet	quaelibet	quidlibet (<i>quodlibet</i>) <i>any one whosoever,</i>
		is declined like quīdam .

403.

Negative Combinations

1. In negative purpose in Latin **nē quis** (*qua, quid*), *that not* (or *lest*) *any one* is used for *that no one*, as : **nē quis veniat**, *that no one may come*.

2. In statements *and no one* = *and not any one* = **neque** (or **nec**) **quisquam**, as: *nec quisquam vēnit, and no one came.*

READING LESSON

404. Ipse Diviciācus plūrimum¹ domī atque in reliquā Galliā poterat. Sed Dumnorix erat nōn magnā grātiā,² atque eā quam habēbat potentiā³ paene ad perniciem Diviciāci, suī frātris, utēbātur. Nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam Diviciācus dolōris⁴ cēpit. Tamen quōdam amōre frāternō commōtus est, quem quivīs in⁵ frātre habēre dēbet. Itaque cum, quae quisque dē frātre dixisset, cōgnōvisset, Caesarem obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret.⁶ Nam verēbātur nē, sī quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset,⁷ cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, aliquī id suā voluntāte factum⁸ existimārent. Haec⁹ cum ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram¹⁰ prēndit; cōsolātus rogat¹¹ finem ōrandi faciat. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat. Monet ut in¹² reliquum tempus omnis suspiciōnēs vitet. Dumnorigi custōdēs pōnit ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

¹ 386. ² 392. ³ 366. ⁴ 188.

⁵ *for or toward.*

⁶ **statuō**, *decide, take measures*; **nē quid . . . statueret**, *that he should not take any very severe measures against his brother.*

⁷ *should happen* = *should be done to.*

⁸ Foot-note 2, p. 133.

⁹ Put before the conjunction for emphasis, and to show that it refers back to the preceding sentence.

¹⁰ Supply *hand*.

¹¹ The **ut** is sometimes, as here, omitted.

¹² *for.* Cf. foot-note 3, p. 149.

CHAPTER LXX

REVIEW OF TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN
DEPENDENT CLAUSES

405. The tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses do not designate a fixed or definite time, but represent an act as *past* or *not past* at the time designated by the verb with which the subjunctive is connected (288-290), thus :

406. Rules for the Tenses of the Subjunctive

1. The *present* subjunctive represents an act or event *not past*, connected with a *primary* tense.
2. The *imperfect* subjunctive represents an act or event *not past*, connected with a *secondary* tense.
3. The *perfect* subjunctive represents a *past* act or event, connected with a *primary* tense.
4. The *pluperfect* subjunctive represents a *past* act or event, connected with a *secondary* tense.

NOTE. — Apply the rules as given above to the subjunctives in the following

READING LESSON

407. Eōdem diē Caesar, ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostis sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis¹ esset ascēsus montis quī cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūtiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T.² Labiēnō imperat ut cum duābus legiōnibus summum iugum montis ascendat. P.² Cōnsidius, quī rei³ militāris perītissimus habēbātur⁴ cum explōrātōribus praemittitur. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, Cōnsidius ad

¹ *what was the ascent, who should find out, he sent = he sent (men) to find out, etc.* (336).

² T. for Titus; P. for Publius.

³ 390.

⁴ *was held = was considered.*

Caesarem contendit ; dicit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,¹ ab hostibus tenērī. Caesar celeriter aciem instrūxit. Labiēnus, cui erat² praescriptum nē³ proelium committeret, nisi ipse Caesar cum cōpiis suis adesset, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō⁴ diē Caesar cōgnōvit montem ā Labiēnō tenērī et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod⁵ nōn vidisset⁶ renūntiāsse.⁷

EXERCISES

408. 1. Cæsar directed⁸ Labienus to ascend⁹ the hill.
 2. He sends Considius to ascertain what is being done.¹⁰
 3. He reports that Labienus does not hold the hill which he has ascended. 4. Considius had seen Labienus on top of¹¹ the hill. 5. But he was so frightened that he thought that Labienus was an enemy.

CHAPTER LXXI

TENSES OF PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

409. The tenses of the participle and infinitive denote time, *present*, *past*, or *future*, relative to the time designated by the verb with which they are connected. Compare 405.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

410.

Participles

1. **Militēs domō proficīscētis vīdī**, *I saw the soldiers (starting) as they were starting from home.*
2. **Militēs domō profectōs vīdī**, *I saw the soldiers (having started) after they had started from home.*
3. **Militēs domō profectūrōs vīdī**, *I saw the soldiers (about to start) as they were about to start from home.*

¹ 384. ² 341, 372. *who had been directed.* ³ *not to*, etc. 398, 2 ; 399.

⁴ *at much day* = *late in the day.* ⁵ *what.* ⁶ 384. ⁷ Foot-note 4, p. 136.

⁸ **praescribō** (341). ⁹ 398, 399. ¹⁰ 287. ¹¹ *top of* = **summus**.

411.

Infinitives

1. The present infinitive represents an act as taking place at the same time as that designated by the verb on which it depends, as :

Dicit sē scribere, he says that he is writing.

Dixit sē scribere, he said that he was writing.

2. The perfect infinitive represents an act that took place before the time designated by the verb on which it depends, as :

Dicit sē scripsisse, he says that he has written.

Dixit sē scripsisse, he said that he had written.

3. The future infinitive represents an act that is to take place later than the time designated by the verb on which it depends, as :

Dicit sē scriptūrum esse, he says that he will write.

Dixit sē scriptūrum esse, he said that he would write.

EXERCISES

412. 1. Dux, in proelium prōcessūrus, militēs cohortātus est. 2. Dux, militēs cohortātus, in proelium prōcessit. 3. Dux, in proelium prōcēdēns, volnerātus est. 4. Duce¹ militēs cohortātō, signum **proeli** committendī datum est. 5. Duce¹ militēs cohortante, hostēs prōcessērunt. 6. Proeliō commissō, multī volnerātī sunt. 7. Militēs tēla coniciunt, militēs tēla conicere dixit. 8. Militēs tēla coniēcērunt, militēs tēla coniēcisse dixit. 9. Militēs mox tēla coniectūrōs esse dixit.

¹ 334. Why are **dux**, in 1, 2, and 3, and **duce**, in 4 and 5, not in the same case? Does the tense or voice of the participle have anything to do with the case of the noun with which it agrees?

413. 1. The leader was wounded while¹ exhorting his soldiers. 2. The leader, having exhorted his soldiers, gave the signal for² battle. 3. The soldiers, having seized³ their arms, are advancing. 5. He said that the soldiers were advancing. 6. We think that the soldiers have advanced and will soon commence battle.

READING LESSON

414. Posterō diē Caesar iter ab Helvētiis āvertit atque ad oppidum finitimum frūmentī comparandī causā ire contendit. Helvētīi, quod Rōmānōs frūmentō sē interclūsūrōs esse exīstimārent, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac lacessere coepērunt. Itaque Caesar equitātum quī sustinēret hostium impetum misit. Ipse triplicem aciem instrūxit atque in summō iugō omnia auxilia conlocārī iussit. Helvētīi, cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt, et sub nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, remōtis equīs nē qua⁴ spēs fugae relinquerētur, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō,⁵ quod plūra eōrum scūta ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixa sunt. Tandem vulneribus cōfectī, ad montem, quī aderat, sē recipere coepērunt.

¹ Use no word for *while*.

² *for* here = *of*.

³ Use the proper form of **capiō**. The perfect participle in Latin, except in deponent verbs, is always passive. So in changing from English to Latin the perfect active participle must first be changed to the passive. Thus *having seized their arms* will become *their arms having been seized*. Will the word for *arms* then be subject nominative, or independent and therefore ablative absolute?

⁴ 402; 403, 1.

⁵ 342.

CHAPTER LXXII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH DUM, DŌNEC, ETC.

415. 1. **Dum**, *while*, regularly takes the present indicative, as :

Dum haec geruntur, *while these things were* (being done) *going on*.

2. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *as long as*, take the indicative, as :

Quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit, *he resisted very bravely as long as he could*.

3. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, regularly take

a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, as :

Dōnec rediit, silentium fuit, *until he returned there was silence*.

b. The subjunctive to denote intention or expectancy, as :

Exspectābat Caesar dum nāvēs convenīrent, *Caesar waited until the ships should assemble, or for the ships to assemble*.

416. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before, sooner than*, take

a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, as :

Profectus sum ante quam vēnistī, *I started before you came*.

b. The subjunctive to denote intention, expectancy, or prevention, as :

Priusquam plūrēs civitātēs cōspīrārent, lātius exercitum distribuit, *before more states should conspire, he distributed his army more widely*.

417. READING LESSON

Dum haec geruntur, Boiī, quī novissimis hostium praesidiō¹ erant, nostrōs ab latere apertō lacessere coepērunt; et id cōspicātī Helvētīi proelium celeriter redintegrāre statuērunt, priusquam Rōmānī Boiōs repellere possent. Diū proelium dubium erat. Nam Rōmānīs bipartitō eōdem

¹ 342.

tempore pugnandum¹ erat. Hostēs, quoad potuērunt, sustinuērunt atque ācrit̄er pugnāvērunt, dōnec nostri impedi-
mentis² castrisque potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque
ūnus ē³ filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō hominum milia
cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: in
finis Lingonum quārtō diē pervēnērunt. Triduum⁴ propter
volnera militum Caesari morandum¹ erat, priusquam eōs
sequi potuit. Itaque Lingonibus imperāvit nē Helvētiōs
frūmentō iuvārent, quoad ipse cum exercitū vēnisset.

EXERCISES

418. 1. The battle was not doubtful till the Boii came to the assistance⁵ of the Helvetii. 2. While the Boii were assailing our men on the flank,⁶ the Helvetii renewed⁷ the battle. 3. Then the Romans had to fight⁸ fiercely before they could get possession of the camp. 4. After the battle Cæsar delayed until he could assist the wounded.⁹ 5. Before the army was able to follow, the enemy had escaped.¹⁰

CHAPTER LXXIII

THE INDICATIVE WITH POSTQUAM, UBI, ETC.

419. RULE. *Postquam*, *after*; *ubi*, *ut*, *when*, *as soon as*; *simul ac* (*atque* 133, note), *as soon as*, *take the indicative* (generally perfect tense).

NOTE. — *Ut*, meaning *as* (not temporal), always takes the indicative, as: *proximā nocte, ut dixerat, profectus est*, *on the next night, he started, as he had said*.

¹ 488, *b*.² 366.³ *of*, not *from* (foot-note 1, p. 89).⁴ 221.⁵ 342.⁶ *latus*.⁷ *redintegrō*, *āre*, etc.⁸ *it was to be fought*, etc. (488, *b*).⁹ Foot-note 1, p. 98.¹⁰ *effugiō*.

420.

READING LESSON

Interim Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Qui¹ cum eum in itinere convēnissent, eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussit. Eō² postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs et arma poposcit. Dum ea cōferuntur circiter hominum milia vi, timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditis³ suppliciō adficerentur, primā nocte, ē castris Helvētiōrum effūgērunt. Quod¹ ubi Caesar intellēxit, imperāvit ut redūcerentur; reliquōs omnīs armīs trāditis⁴ in dēditionem accōpit. Ita bellum Helvētiōrum cōfectum est. Helvētiōs in finis suōs, unde⁵ erant profectī, revertī iussit. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x. Summa omnium, quī domō exiērunt, fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII.

¹ **Qui cum**, *who when = and when they*. **Quod ubi Caesar intellēxit** = *and when Caesar learned this*. In Latin a relative, pronoun, or adverb, at the beginning of a sentence, referring to something in the preceding sentence, serves as a connective, where the English uses a demonstrative or personal pronoun, often with a conjunction.

² *There after Caesar came = after Caesar came there*. **eō** refers to the preceding sentence, and so is put first to connect the thought more closely. In English the conjunction regularly comes first. Cf. foot-note 9, p. 158.

³ *The arms being given up = if their arms should be given up*. The ablative absolute is often equivalent to an English clause. It is well first to give the words their exact meaning, then translate by whatever phrase or clause will best express the idea.

⁴ What is the best translation for *armīs trāditīs* here?

⁵ PLACE WHERE

ibi, *in that place, there*.

ubi, *in which place, where*.

PLACE TO WHICH

eō, *to that place, thither, there*.

quō, *to which place, whither, where*.

PLACE FROM WHICH

inde, *from that place, thence, there*.

unde, *from which place, whence, where*.

CHAPTER LXXIV

CONDITIONS AND WISHES

421. A conditional sentence contains two clauses: the *condition*, introduced by **sī**, if (negative **nisi** or **sī nōn**), and the *conclusion*.

NOTE. — Read very carefully 422-424, then learn 425.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

422.

Simple Conditions

A condition which simply states that a certain thing is (or was) true, if some other thing is (or was) true, without implying anything as to the fact, takes the indicative, in any tense required, as:

- a. **Sī hōc facis, rēctē facis**, if you do this, you do right.
- b. **Sī hōc fēcistī, tē laudō**, if you did this, I commend you.
- c. **Sī dux aderat, milītēs fortiter pugnābant**, if the leader was present, the soldiers fought bravely.

423.

Future Conditions

1. Future more Vivid with the Indicative

A condition, referring distinctly or vividly to the future, corresponding to the English with *shall* or *will* and implying expectation or probability, takes the indicative; future (or *future perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the future in the conclusion, as:

(Time of condition and conclusion the same)

- a. **Sī milītēs in proelium prōcēdent, dux cum eis ibit.**
If the soldiers advance to battle, the leader will go with them.

(Condition completed)

- b. **Nisi arma trādideris, pācem tēcum nōn faciet.**
Unless you give (shall have given) up the arms, he will not make peace with you.

NOTE. — The arms must be given up before peace will be made.

2. *Future less Vivid with the Subjunctive*

A condition referring less distinctly or vividly to the future, corresponding to the English with *should* or *would* and implying uncertainty or mere possibility, takes the subjunctive ; present (or *perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the present in the conclusion, as :

(Time of condition and conclusion the same)

- a. **Sī mīlitēs in proellum prōcēdant, dux cum eīs eat.**

If the soldiers should advance to battle, the leader would go with them.

(Condition completed)

- b. **Sī arma trādideris, pācem tēcum faciat.**

If you should give up the arms, he would make peace with you

NOTE. — The arms were to be given up *before* peace would be made.

424. Conditions Contrary to Fact

A condition in which something is assumed contrary to the fact, takes the subjunctive ; the imperfect referring to the present or something continuing to present time, and the pluperfect referring to something finished in the past, as :

- a. **Sī dux adesset, exercitus nōn verērētur.**

If the leader were present, the army would not fear.

- b. **Sī dux adfuisset, exercitus nōn superātus esset.**

If the leader had been present, the army would not have been defeated.

425. Summary of Conditions

- I. Simple Conditions . . . take the indicative, in any tense required.

[a. Future more Vivid . . . indicative ; future (or *future perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the future in the conclusion.

- II. } b. Future less Vivid . . . subjunctive ; present (or *perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the present in the conclusion.

- III. { a. Contrary to Fact, *present* . . . the imperfect subjunctive.
 b. Contrary to Fact, *past* . . . the pluperfect subjunctive.

Wishes

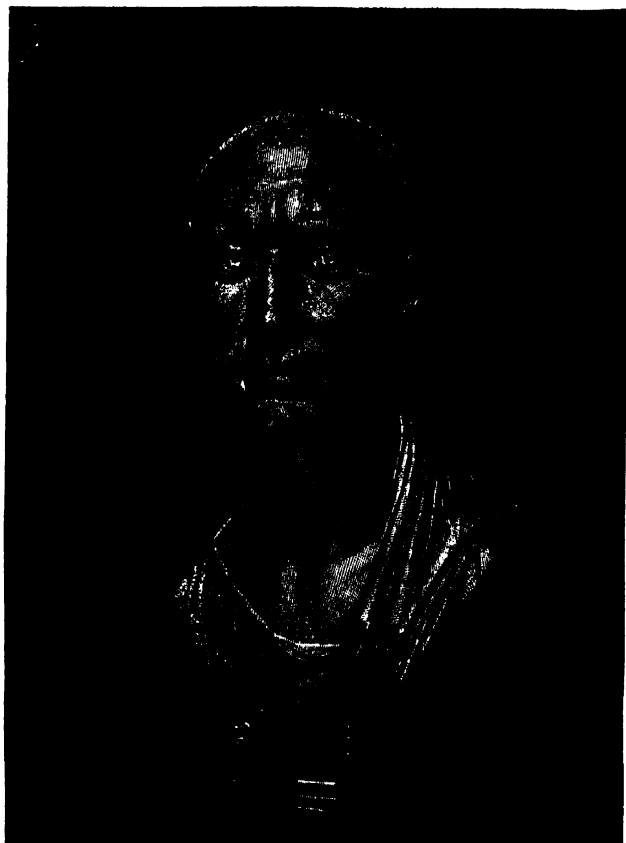
426. Clauses expressing a wish take the subjunctive, frequently but not always introduced by **utinam**, *would that*; they correspond exactly to conditions of the less vivid future (423, 2), and to conditions contrary to fact (424), as:

1. **Utinam meus frāter veniat**, *O that my brother would come!* (423, 2.)
2. **Utinam meus frāter adesset**, *I wish that my brother were here.* (424, a.)
3. **Utinam meus frāter adfuisset**, *would that my brother had been here!* (424, b.)

EXERCISES

427. 1. Si vīs, potes. 2. Si haec civitās est, civis sum.
 3. Nisi imperātor aderat, lēgātus nōn saepe proelium committēbat. 4. Si nēmō praetereā sequētur, cum solā decimā legiōne ibō. 5. Si militēs vicerint, laudābuntur. 6. Si urbs oppugnāta sit, civēs sē dēfendant. 7. Si militēs fortiter pugnent, vincant. 8. Si nōn dux abesset, fortius militēs pugnārent. 9. Utinam ille adesset! 10. Si princeps coniūratiōnis ex urbe exisset, nōs salvī essēmus. 11. Utinam exisset et omnēs sēcum suōs cōdūxisset! 12. Ariovistus dixit: "In Galliam nōn vēnissem nisi rogātus essem ā Gallis. 13. Si mihi bellum intuleris, mē dēfendam." 14. Caesar respondit: "Nōlī bellum Haeduīs sociisque eōrum inferre; redde obsidēs quōs habēs; si id ita fēceris, mihi populōque Rōmānō amicitia tēcum erit." 15. Si Ariovistus id quod Caesar postulāverat fēcisset, Caesar pācem cum eō fēcisset.

428. 1. If these brave soldiers fight, they conquer. 2. If they fought, they conquered. 3. If they should fight, they would conquer; if they should conquer, they would be praised. 4. If they had fought, they would have conquered. 5. O that they may conquer! 6. Would that they had conquered! 7. If you will go, I will go with you. 8. If you will return the hostages, I will not make war upon you. 9. If you should make war upon me, I should seize all your towns. 10. If our ancestors had not fought bravely, we should not now be free. 11. Would that all men were free!



GAIUS IVLIVS CAESAR

From the marble bust in the British Museum

SELECTIONS FOR READING

FABLES

429. THE KID AND THE WOLF

Haedus stāns in tēctō domūs¹ lupō² praetereuntī maledīxit. Cui lupus, "Nōn tū," inquit,³ "sēd tēctum mihi maledixit." Saepe locus et tempus timidōs hominēs audācis reddit.

430. IN UNION IS STRENGTH

Agricola senex, cum mortem sibi⁴ adpropinquāre sentiret,⁵ filiōs convocāvit, quōs interdum discordāre nōverat,⁶ et fascem virgulārum adferri iubet. Quibus⁷ adlātis, filiōs hortātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod⁷ cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulās virgās; iisque celeriter fractis, docuit filiōs, quam⁸ firma rēs esset concordia quamque imbēcillis discordia.

431. SOUR GRAPES

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium virium suārum contentiōne, sī⁹ eam forte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatigāta inānī labōre discēdēns dixit: "At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eās in viā reptās¹⁰ tollerem."¹¹

¹ 210, *b*.

² *lupō praetereuntī maledīxit*, to a wolf passing by spoke ill = reviled a wolf as he was passing by (409, 410, 1).

³ *inquit* = said he, used, as here, only in a direct quotation.

⁴ 341.

⁵ 279, 2.

⁶ From *nōscō*.

⁷ 420, note 1.

⁸ *how*.

⁹ *si* = to see if.

¹⁰ *reptās*, found = if they were found.

¹¹ 424.

432.

THE OXEN

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs¹ in maximā concordīā, et sic ab omnī ferārū incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed dissidiō inter illōs ortō,² singulī ā feris petiti et laniāti sunt.

Fābula docet quantum bonī³ sit⁴ in concordīā.

433.

THE TRUMPETER

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, "Nōlite⁵ mē," inquit, "interficere; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam⁶ habeō prae-ter hanc tubam." At hostēs, "Propter hōc ipsum," inquit, "tē interimēmus, quod, cum ipse pugnandi⁷ sis⁸ imperitus, aliōs ad pugnam incitāre solēs."

Fābula docet nōn solum maleficōs esse pūniendōs sed etiam eōs qui aliōs ad male faciendum irritent.

434.

THE GOLDEN EGG

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam, quae ei cotidiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī⁹ coepit illam¹⁰ auri mās-sam intus celāre¹⁰ et gallinam occidit. Sed nihil in eā reperit nisi quod¹¹ in aliis gallinis reperiri solet. Itaque dum¹² maiōribus dīvitiis¹³ inhiat etiam minōrēs perdidit.

435.

THE LION'S SHARE

Societātem iūnxerant leō, iuvenca, capra, ovis. Praedā autem¹⁴ quam cēperant in quattuor partis divisā, leō, "Prima," ait, "mea est; debētur enim haec praestantiae meae. Tollam et secundam, quam merētur rōbur meum.

¹ From **bōs**. ² From **orior**. ³ 188. ⁴ 287. ⁵ 347. ⁶ 402.

⁷ 389, 390. ⁸ 279, 1. ⁹ 303. ¹⁰ *that she*, etc., 254, *b*; and 306.

¹¹ **nisi quod** = *except what*. ¹² 415, 1. ¹³ 341.

¹⁴ The words **autem**, **enim**, **ferē**, **modo**, **quidem**, **quoque**, **vērō**, are postpositive. If they belong to a single word, they are put directly after that word; if they belong to a phrase or clause, they come **after the first word** (except a preposition) of that phrase or clause.

Tertiam vindicat sibi ēgregius labor meus. Quārtam quī sibi adrogāre voluerit, is sciat¹ sē habitūrum mē inimicum sibi." Quid facerent imbēcillae bēstiae? aut quae sibi leō-nem infestum habēre vellet?

436.

BELLING THE CAT

Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōsilium, quō modo ā fēle cavērent.² Multis aliis propositis, omnibus³ placuit, ut eī tintinābulum adnecterētur; sic enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse.⁴ Sed cum iam inter mūrīs quaererētur⁵ quī fēli tintinābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet in suādendō⁶ plūrimōs esse audācis, in ipsō periculō timidōs.

ROMAN HISTORY

SATURNUS

437. Antiquissimīs temporibus Saturnus in Ītaliā vēnisse dicitur, arma Iovis⁷ fugiēns. Hanc regiōnem Latium vocāvit quoniam his in ōrīs tūtus latuisset. Saturnus Ītalōs⁸ primus agricultūram⁸ docuit.

LATINUS AND AENEAS

438. Postea Latinus rēx fuit. Interea Trōiā in Asiā captā ā Graecīs, Aenēās dux Trōiānus cum multis sociis in Ītaliā pervēnit, cui Latinus filiam Lāviniam in māttrimō-nium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam ab nōmine uxō-ris Lāvinium appellāvit

¹ 397. ² 287. ³ 360.

⁴ **posse** is infinitive because it expresses the *thought* of all, as suggested by **omnibus placuit** (306).

⁶ 279, 2; and 488, *b*.

⁶ 318, *a*.

⁷ **Iuppiter, Iovis, Jupiter.**

⁸ 377.

ALBA LONGA

439. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, rēgnum accēpit. Hic in monte Albānō urbem condidit quae Alba Longa appellāta est. Silvius deinde rēgnāvit, Ascani filius casū quōdam in silvis nātus. Hōc cōgnōmen
 5 rēgibus postea omnibus mānsit, quī Albae¹ rēgnāvērunt. Tandem Silvius Procās duōs filiōs reliquit, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Amūlius per dolum rēgnum obtinuit. Addit sceleri scelus : Numitōris filium interfēcit et filiam, Rheam
 10 Silviam, Vestālem virginem fēcit nē quem² filium relinqueret.

ROMULUS AND REMUS

440. Sed Rhea Silvia ā Mārte geminōs filiōs, Rōmulum et Remum, peperit.³ Quod⁴ ubi Amūlius cōgnōvit, māter in custōdiam datur, puerōs in Tiberim abici iubet. Forte super ripās Tiberis sē effūderat, et cum alveus, quō expositi
 15 erant pueri, ad litus fluitāset, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō reliquit. Eōrum vagitum lupa, quae ad flūmen bibendī causā⁵ vēnerat, audivit et infāntis nūtrivit. Faustulus pās-
 tor quī puerōs invēnit eōs tulit in casam et coniugī dedit ēducandōs.

FOUNDING OF ROME, 753 B. C.

441. Pueri inter pāstōrēs adolēvērunt. Cum cōgnōvissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae māter fuisset, Amūlium interfēcē-
 runt et Numitōri avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum frātrēs in iis locis ubi expositi ubique ēducāti erant urbem condidē-
 runt. Fāma est lūdicro⁶ frātris Remum novōs trānsiluisse
 25 mūrōs, inde ab irātō Rōmulō interfectum.⁷ Ita sōlus potī-
 tus est imperiō⁸ Rōmulus ; condita urbs conditōris nōmine appellāta est.

¹ 354.² 403, 1.³ From **parlō**.⁴ 420, note 1.⁵ 367.⁶ 342.⁷ 323, n. 2.⁸ 366.

SEIZURE OF THE SABINE WOMEN

442. Rōmulus, ut civium numerum augēret, asyllum aperuit ad quod multī ex civitatibus suis pulsī vērunt. Iam rēs Rōmāna erat valida; sed novae urbis civibus coniugēs deērant. Tum Rōmulus lēgātōs in vicinās gentis mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque peterent. Nusquam benignē lēgatiō audita est. Itaque Rōmulus lūdōs et spectāculum instituit. Multī studiō etiam videndae¹ novae urbis convenērunt, maximē² Sabīnī cum liberis ac coniugibus. Ubi tempus spectāculi vēnit, signō datō, iuventūs Rōmāna virginēs rapuit.

10

WAR WITH THE SABINES

443. At raptarum³ parentēs tum sordidā veste lacrimisque civitatēs concitābant, quae statim bellum parant. Bellum maximum fuit; nam Sabīnī callidissimī erant nec ostendērunt bellum priusquam intulērunt. Cōnsiliō etiam additus est dolus. Spurius Tarpēius Rōmānae praeerat⁴ arcī.⁵ Huius filiam virginem aurō corrūpit dux ut armatōs⁶ in arcem accipiat — aquam forte ea tum extrā moenia petītum⁷ ierat. Illa petiit ut, quod in sinistris manibus habērent, sibi darent. Aureās enim⁸ armillās magnī ponderis⁹ gemmātōsque magnā speciē¹⁰ anulōs viderat. At¹¹ hostēs in arcē ductī scūtis Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam haec quoque¹² in sinistris manibus habēbant.

THE BATTLE, IN WHICH JUPITER STAYS THE FLIGHT OF THE ROMANS

444. Tenuēre¹³ tamen arcem Sabīnī. Sed ira et cupiditās recuperandae arcis animōs Rōmānōrum stimulāvit. Princi-

¹ 318, b; and 319. ² mostly (194).

³ of the seized (maidens), p. 98, foot-note 1.

⁵ the armed (men). Cf. 6. ⁶ 321.

⁸ 136. ⁹ 392. ¹⁰ also. Cf. 7.

⁴ 341.

⁷ Foot-note 14, p. 172.

¹¹ Perfect (98).

pēs utrimque pugnam ciēbant : ab ¹ Sabīnis Mettius Curtius, ab Rōmānis Hostius Hostilius. Mox Hostius cadit et Rōmāna inclinātur aciēs. Rōmulus arma ad caelum tollēns, “Juppiter,” inquit, “pater deum ² hominumque, arcē ³ hostis
5 fugamque foedam siste. Hic ego tibi templum Statōri Jovī voveō.” Restitēre ⁴ Rōmānī tamquam caelestī voce iussi. At Mettius Curtius clāmābat, “Vicimus perfidōs hospitēs. Iam sciunt aliud ⁵ esse virginēs rapere, aliud ⁶ pugnāre cum viris.” In eum haec ⁶ glōriantem ⁷ Rōmulus impetum facit.
10 Ex equō tum Mettius pellitur. Pulsum ⁷ Rōmānī persequuntur, et alia Rōmāna aciēs audāciā rēgis accēnsa fundit Sabīnōs. Miserrima fit caedēs. Tum Sabīnae mulierēs sē inter tēla volantia intulērunt hinc patrēs, hinc virōs, ōrantēs nē sē sanguine soceri ⁸ generique maculārent. Movet rēs ⁹
15 nunc multitudinem, nunc ducēs. Silentium et repentina fit quiēs.

TREATY WITH THE SABINES—INSTITUTIONS OF ROMULUS

445. Inde ad foedus faciendum ducēs prōdeunt, nec pācem modo sed civitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt, atque imperium omne cōferunt Rōmam. Ut Sabīnis tamen aliquid
20 darētur, cīvēs Quirītēs ¹⁰ ā Curibus, oppidō ¹¹ Sabīnōrum, appellāti sunt. Centum ex seniōribus Rōmulus lēgit, quī propter aetātem senātus ¹⁰ vocāti sunt. Plēbem in cūriās trīgintā divisit. Eōdem tempore centuriae cōscriptae sunt. Rōmulō ¹² rēgnante Rōma domi militiaeque tantum ¹³ valuit
25 ut quadrāgintā deinde annōs tūtā pācem habēret.

His rēbus ¹² cōfectis, dum exercitum recēnsset, subitō coōrta est tempestās cum magnō fragōre tonitribusque,

¹ *ab* = *on the side of*.

² *deum* for *deōrum* (457).

³ From *arceō* (294, *a*).

⁴ Perfect (98).

⁵ *one thing . . . another thing* (200 and 201, *a*).

⁶ 385, *b, c*.

⁷ 409; 410, 1 and 2.

⁸ *as fathers-in-law and sons-in-law*.

⁹ *rēs*, *thing*, here means *the plea* (of the women).

¹⁰ 84 and 85.

¹¹ 82 and 83.

¹² 334.

¹³ 386.

et Rōmulus ē cōspectū ablātus¹ est; eum ad deōs abisse
 volgō crēditum est; cui rei fidem fēcit Proculus, quī in
 contiōnem prōdit et dixit Rōmulum caelō repente dēlap-
 sum ita locūtum esse: “Abī,² nūtiā² Rōmānis caelestēs
 ita velle ut mea Rōma caput³ orbis terrārum⁴ sit; proinde
 rem militārem colant⁵ sciantque nullās opēs hūmānās
 armīs⁶ Rōmānis resistere posse.” “Haec,” inquit, “locū-
 tus sublimis abiit.” Ita Rōmulus prō deō cultus⁷ et Quirī-
 nus appellātus est.

REIGN OF NUMA POMPILIUS, B. C. 715-672

446. Post ūnīus annī interrēgnum Numa Pompilius, vir¹⁰
 summā iūstitiā⁸ et religiōne et cōsultissimus omnis divīnī
 atque hūmānī iūris,⁹ rēx creātus est. Curibus¹⁰ habitābat.
 Cum Rōmam¹¹ vēnisset, ut ferōcem populum religiōne ac
 metū deōrum mitigāret, plūrima sacra instituit et sacer-
 dōtēs suōs cuique¹² deōrum praefēcit. Āram Vestae cōn-
 secrāvit et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum¹³ virginibus dedit.
 Jovis sacerdotem creāvit, insignique cum veste et curūli
 sellā adōrnāvit. Huic duōs flāminēs adiēcit, Mārti ūnum,
 alterum Quirinō. Sacerdōtēs duodecim Mārti lēgit, quī cae-
 lestia arma, quae ancilia appellantur, ferre per urbem canen-
 tēs carmina solēbant. Pontificem deinde maximum lēgit,
 eīque omnia pūblica prīvātaque sacra attribuit, ut idem
 pontifex deum cōsuleret auguriis quae suscipienda¹⁴ essent.
 Iānum indicem pācis bellique fēcit, apertus ut in armīs esse
 civitātem, clausus pācātōs omnis populōs significāret. Bis²⁵
 post Numae rēgnum clausus fuit, semel T. Manliō cōnsule

¹ From **auferō**.

² 294, a.

³ 84 and 85.

⁴ circle of the lands = the world.

⁵ 397.

⁶ 360.

⁷ et connects **cultus** and **appellātus**.

⁸ 392.

⁹ 390.

¹⁰ 352, b; and 354, i.

¹¹ 354, 2.

¹² to each one his own or special.

¹³ he intrusted (gave) the fire to the virgins to be continually kept = he intrusted the keeping of the fire to, etc.

¹⁴ 312, d; and 313, 2.

post Pūnicum primum bellum, iterum imperātore Caesare Augustō post proelium Actiacum.

Eā¹ pietāte omnibus pectora imbuerat ut fidēs ac iūs nōn minus quam poenārum metus civitātem regerent. Ita duo
 5 rēgēs, alius² aliā viā, ille³ bellō hīc pāce, civitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trigintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā. Valida et bellī et pācis artibus⁴ erat cīvītās.

REIGN OF TULLUS HOSTILIUS, 672-640 B. C.

1. War between the Albans and Romans

447. Numae morte ad interrēgnum rēs rediit. Inde Tullum Hostilium, cuius avus in clārā pugnā adversus Sabinōs
 10 fortissimē pugnāverat, rēgem populus creāvit. Hīc nōn solum proximō rēgi dissimilis sed ferōcior etiam quam Rōmulus fuit et undique māteriam excitandī bellī quaerēbat. Forte ēvēnit ut agrestēs Rōmānī ex Albānō agrō, Albānī ex Rōmānō, praedās agerent. Lēgātis ad rēs repetendās
 15 nēquīquam missis, bellum utrimque summā ope parābatur. Albānī priōrēs ingentī exercitū in agrum Rōmānum fēcēre impetum. Interim Tullus audācter nocte in agrum Albānum iniit. Inde dux Albānus lēgātum praemissum⁵ nūntiāre Tullō iubet, priusquam dimicent, opus esse con-
 20 loquiō.⁶ Ita utrimque exercitūs ducēs in medium ad colloquium prōcēdunt. Ibi infit Albānus: "Inūriās et nōn redditās rēs et ego et tū, Tulle, causam huiusce⁷ esse belli vidimus. Sed si vēra dicenda sunt, cupidō imperī duōs cōgnātōs vicinōsque populōs ad arma stimulat. Itaque
 25 ineāmus⁸ aliquam viam quā⁹ utrī utrīs imperent,¹⁰ sine

¹ that = such.

² 201, b.

³ 254, a.

⁴ 158.

⁵ he orders a messenger, sent ahead, to announce = he sends a messenger ahead and orders him to announce, etc.

⁶ 380.

⁷ The appended -ce is often found with some form of hīc, as: huiusce, hōsce, etc.

⁸ 397.

⁹ 48.

¹⁰ Connect this with dēcernī (287).

magnā clāde, sine multō sanguine, dēcernī possit. Utrimque ratiō inītur, cui fortūna ipsa prae-buit māteriam.

2. The Horatii and Curiatii

Forte in duōbus tum exercitibus erant trigeminī frātrēs, Horātiī Cūriāti-que. Cum trigeminis agunt rēgēs ut prō suā quisque patriā dimicent ferrō. Priusquam dimicārent 5 foedus ictum est eis lēgibus, ut ibi imperium esset unde victōria fuisset. Foedere ictō, trigeminī arma capiunt et incitāti adhortantium¹ vocibus in medium² inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Cōnsēderant utrimque prō castris duo exercitūs. Signum datur infestisque armis ternī iuvenēs magnō animō 10 concurrunt. Ut primō concursū increpuēre arma micantēs-que fulsēre gladii, horror ingēns spectantis perstringit. Cōnsertis deinde manibus duo Rōmānī super alium alius, volnerātis tribus Albānis, expirantēs corruērunt. Ad quō-
rum³ cāsum cum conclāmāset gaudiō Albānus exercitus, 15 Rōmānae legiōnēs sine spē iam in ūnum oculōs convertēre quem trēs Cūriātiī circumsteterant. Forte is integer fuit et ferōx, sed ūniversis sōlus nēquiquam pār. Itaque fugam simulāvit ut singulōs intervallis brevibus secūtūrōs adgrederētur. Iam aliquantum spatī ex eō locō ubi pugnātum 20 est aufūgerat, cum respiciēns videt ūnum haud procul ab sēsē abesse. In⁴ eum magnō impetū rediit et dum⁵ Albānus exercitus inclāmat Cūriātiis utī opem ferant frātrī, iam Horātius caesō hoste victor secundam pugnam petēbat. Tum clāmōre faventium⁶ adiūtus, priusquam tertius cōn- 25 sequī posset, et⁷ alterum Cūriātium interficit. Iamque singuli⁸ supererant, sed nec spē⁹ nec viribus parēs. Alter integer est et geminātā victōriā¹⁰ ferōx, alter vulnere et cursū cōnfectus est. Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus

¹ by the cheers of (those) encouraging (foot-note 1, p. 98) them.

² into the middle between = to a point halfway between. ³ 420, n. 1.

⁴ upon. ⁵ 415, 1. ⁶ Cf. 1. ⁷ also or even.

⁸ singuli = one on each side. ⁹ 158. ¹⁰ 141.

exsultāns illum male sustinentem arma necat et iacentem spoliat. Rōmānī ovariantes ac grātulantēs Horātium accipiunt. Ita exercitūs inde domōs abductī sunt. Princeps Horātius ibat trigemina spolia prae sē gerēns.

3. Treachery of Fufetius in the War against Fidenae

5 Nōn diū pāx Albāna mānsit. Nam Mettius Fufetius, dux Albānus, ā suō populō culpābātur quod tribus militibus fortūna pūblica commissā esset. Itaque, ut animōs volgī conciliāret, causam bellī quaerēbat. Hōc per prōditiōnem effēcīt. Fidēnātēs, colōniam Rōmānam, concitāvit ut arma
10 contrā Rōmānōs caperent et cum Vēientibus, quī Rōmānōrum hostēs erant, sē coniungerent, pollicitus cum cōpiis suis eōs esse adiūtūrum. Cum Fidēnae apertē dēfēcissent, Tullus contrā hostis exercitum dūcīt. Fufetius per speciem societātis cōpiās suās cum Rōmānis coniungit. Mettiō¹ nōn mul-
15 tum animī² erat. Ergō nec manēre cum Tullō ausus est nec trānsire apertē ad Fidēnātēs. Cōsiliū erat fortūnam pugnae spectāre, et utri vicissent iis addere sē socium. Dum dubitat, sinistrum cornū cui praeerat inclināre coepit. Inde Tullus in trepidā rē³ spē simulātā clārā vōce equitēs
20 redire ad proelium iubet. Terror ad hostis trānsiit nec illi tulēre impetum. Nōn alia ante Rōmāna pugna atrōcior fuit. Posterō diē Fufetius atrōcissimō suppliciō interfectus est et Alba propter prōditiōnem ducis penitus dēlēta est.

4. Growth of the City and Death of Tullus

Rōma interim crēscit Albae ruīnis;⁴ duplicātur cīvium
25 numerus. Principēs Albānōrum in patrēs,⁵ ut ea quoque pars rei pūblīcae crēsceret, lēgit, cūriamque fēcīt quae Hostilia appellāta est. Et, ut omnium ōrdinum vīribus aliquid ex novō populō adicerētur, equitum turmās ex Albānis lēgit.

¹ 93.

² *force of character, will, decision.*

³ *in the critical situation.*

⁴ 141.

⁵ *senators.*

Hāc fiduciā virium Tullus Sabīnis¹ bellum indixit. Cum bellum utrimque summā ope parārent, Tullus prior in agrum Sabīnum trānsiit. Pugna ferōx fuit, ubi² equitātū auctō nūper plūrimū³ Rōmāna aciēs valuit. Victis Sabīnis, cum in magnā glōriā rēgnū Tulli ac tōta rēs Rōmāna 5 esset, nūntiātum rēgi patribusque est in monte Albānō lapidibus⁴ pluisse. Ab hōc prōdigiō novemdiāle sacrum pūblicē susceptum est. Haud ita multō⁵ post pestilentiā labōrātum est.⁶ Unde⁷ cum pigritia militandi orerētur,⁸ nūlla tamen ab armīs quiēs dabātur ā bellicō rēge, quī salū- 10 briōra crēdēbat militiae⁹ quam domī⁹ iuvenum corpora esse, dōnec ipse quoque longinquō morbō est implicitus. Tum ita fracti sunt spīritūs illi ferōcēs ut animum sacris atque omnibus magnīs parvisque superstitiōnibus dēderet. Trāditur rēgem irā Iovis ictum fulmine cum domō cōnfla- 15 grāsse. Tullus magnā glōriā belli rēgnāvit annōs duōs et trigintā.

REIGN OF ANCUS MARCIUS, B. C. 640-616

448. Tullō mortuō, Numac nepōtem Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit. Ancus cupidus otī¹⁰ erat et avī mōrēs atque institūta restituere parābat. Tum Latīnī, qui- 20 buscum, Tullō rēgnante, ictum foedus erat, sustulērunt animōs et incursiōnem in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt. Ancus, priusquam eis bellum indiceret, lēgātum misit, quī rēs repeteret. Lēgātus, ubi ad finis eōrum vēnit, unde¹¹ rēs repetuntur, capite vėlātō, ait : " Audi, Iuppiter ; audīte, finēs 25 huius populi. Ego sum pūblicus nūntius populi Rōmānī ; verbis meis fidēs sit." ¹² Inde lēgātus, quī fētiālis appellātur,

¹ 341.

² when = in which.

³ 386.

⁴ 48.

⁵ not so very long afterwards (180).

⁶ there was suffering from (371, b) = the people were afflicted with.

⁷ whence although = and although from this (420, n. 1).

⁸ 279.

⁹ 354, 1.

¹⁰ 390.

¹¹ whence (420, n. 5) = from whom.

¹² 397.

peragit postulāta. Si nōn dēduntur¹ rēs, quās exposcit, hastam sanguineam in finis hostium ēmittit. Hōc modō bellum indictum est, mōremque eum posterī accēpērunt.

Lēgātō rēs repetenti Latīnī superbē respondērunt. Itaque
5 bellum eis indictum est. Ancus exercitū novō cōnscrip̄tō profectus urbem Latīnōrum vī cēpit, secūsusque mōrem rēgum priōrum, quī rem Rōmānam auxerant hostibus² in civitātem accipiendis,² multitudinem omnem Rōmam trādūxit. Urbī montem Aventīnum adiūnxit. Iāniculum
10 quoque nōn solum mūrō³ sed etiam ob commoditātem itineris ponte³ Subliciō in Tiberim factō coniūctum est. Nec urbs tantum hōc rēge⁴ crēvit sed etiam ager finēsque. Rēgnāvit Ancus annōs quattuor et vīgintī, cuilibet⁵ superiōrum⁶ rēgum bellī pācisque et artibus⁷ et glōriā pār.

REIGN OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS, B. C. 616-578

15 449. Ancō rēgnante Lūcius Tarquinius cum coniuge et fortūnis omnibus Rōmam migrāvit. Ad Iāniculum forte ventum erat.⁸ Ibi eī,⁹ ut trāditum est,¹⁰ carpentō sedenti¹¹ cum uxōre aquila dēmissa pilleum aufert, superque carpen-
tum cum magnō clangōre volitāns rūsus capiti aptē repōnit,
20 inde sublimis abīt. Accēpit id augurium laeta¹² uxor perita prōdigiorum,¹³ et alta spērāre virum¹⁴ iubet. Hās spēs cō-
gitiōnēsque sēcum portantēs urbem ingressi sunt. Ibi benignitāte ac comitāte amicitiam rēgis sibi conciliāvit et tūtōr etiam liberis rēgis institūtus est. Itaque cum comitia¹⁵
25 rēgi creandō fierent,¹⁵ puerōs vēnātum¹⁶ misit et scienter effēcīt ut ipse cōnsensū populi rēx creārētur. Nec minus rēgnī¹⁸ suī firmandi quam augendae rei¹⁸ pūblicae memor

¹ 422.² 318, b; 319.³ 48.⁴ he being king (334) = while he was king, or during his reign. ⁵ 402.⁶ former.⁷ 158.⁸ 371, b.⁹ eī = from him.¹⁰ as has been handed down (371, b) = according to tradition.¹¹ while sitting (409, 410) in his chariot.¹² joyful = joyfully.¹³ 390.¹⁴ husband.¹⁵ when assemblies were formed = when meetings were being held. ¹⁶ 321.

centum in patrēs lēgit. Bellum primum cum Latinis gessit, praedāque¹ inde² magnā potitus, lūdōs fēcit. Tum primo circō, quī nunc maximus dicitur, dēsīgnātus locus est; deinde annuī mānsēre lūdi. Bellō Sabinō cōfectō Tarquinius primus triumphāns Rōmam rediit. Maiōre inde animō⁵ pācis opera inchoāvit quam gesserat bella; nam mūrō lapideō urbem cingere parat, et infima urbis loca circā forum cloācis siccāt; et aedem Iovis in Capitōliō inchoāvit.

Eō tempore in rēgiā prōdigium visū³ mirābile fuit: puerō⁴ dormienti, cui Serviō Tulliō fuit nōmen, caput⁵ 10 ārsit. Tum Tanaquil: "Scire licet," inquit, "hunc⁶ lūmen⁷ quondam rēbus nostris adfictis futūrum⁸ praesidiumque: proinde eum omnī indulgentiā nūtriāmus." Inde puer omnibus artibus puerilibus ērūdītus est. Iuvenis ēvāsīt vērē indolis rēgiae, nec,⁹ cum quaererētur gener 15 Tarquiniō, quisquam⁹ Rōmānae iuventūtis ullā arte cōferri potuit; filiam eī suam rēx in mātīmōnium dedit. Duodēquadrāgēsimō fermē annō ex quō rēgnāre coeperat Tarquinius, nōn apud rēgem modo sed apud patrēs plēbemque maximō honōre¹⁰ Servius Tullius erat. Tum Anci 20 filii duo, indignantēs quod patriō rēgnō tūtōris fraude pulsī essent, et veritī ut nē ab Tarquiniō quidem ad sē rediret rēgnū, rēgem in rēgiā occidērunt. Clāmōr inde subitō ortus est concursusque mīrantium¹¹ quid rei¹² esset. Tanaquil inter tumultum claudī rēgiā iubet. Cum clāmōr im- 25 petusque multitudinis vix sustinēri posset, ex superiōre parte aedium per fenestrās populum adloquitur. Iubet bonō animō¹⁰ esse: sōpītum fuisse¹³ rēgem subitō ictū; ferrum haud altē in corpus dēscendisse;¹³ paucis diēbus ipsum

¹ 366.

² 420, n. 5.

³ 321, 2.

⁴ to the boy sleeping = while the boy lay asleep.

⁵ head = hair.

⁶ this (boy).

⁷ 85.

⁸ futūrum (323, n. 2; and 306) is about to be = is destined to be.

⁹ 402, 403, 2.

¹⁰ 392.

¹¹ of (those) wondering.

¹² what of action (188) there was = what was going on or what the matter was.

¹³ 306, with note.

rēgem esse visūrōs ;¹ interim Servium Tullium rēgis mānera obitūrum esse.¹ Servius cum lictōribus prōdit, ac sede rēgiā sedēns alia² dēcernit, dē aliīs² cōsultūrum sē rēgem esse simulat. Itaque per aliquot diēs, cum iam expirāset
 5 Tarquinius, cēlātā morte suās opēs firmāvit. Tum dēmum, cum complōrātiōne³ in rēgiā ortā⁴ mors patefacta esset, Servius voluntāte patrum rēgnāvit. Ancī liberī iam tum exsulātum⁵ ierant.

REIGN OF SERVIUS TULLIUS, B. C. 578-534

450. Servius Tullius scienter ac bene imperium admini-
 10 strāvit. Nec iam pūblicis magis cōsiliīs quam privātis sē mūnivit. Peropportūnē Vēientibus bellum indictum est. In eō bellō et virtūs et fortūna ēnituit Tulli ; fūsōque ingenti hostium exercitū summō cum honōre rediit, adgrediturque⁶ inde ad pācis maximum opus. Cēnsū enim instituit, rem
 15 salūberrimam futūrō imperiō. Tum classis centuriāsque ex cēnsū discrīpsit. Prīma classis divisa est in seniōrēs quī urbem custōdīrent ;⁷ iuvenēs quī bella gererent. Milia LXXX cīvium cēnsa⁸ dicuntur. Ad⁹ eam multitudinem urbs quōque amplificanda erat. Addit duōs collis, Quirīnālem Viminā-
 20 lemque. Aggere et fossis et mūrō circumdat urbem. Simul et aliquod addere urbī decus voluit. Iam tum erat inclitum Diānae fānum. Id commūniter ā civitātibus Asiae factum erat. Eum cōnsēnsū civitātum laudāvit Servius. Itaque populis Latinīs persuāsit ut et ipsī¹⁰ Rōmae fānum Diānae
 25 cum populō Rōmānō facerent. Ea erat cōfessiō caput rērū¹¹ Rōmam esse dē quō totiēns armis certātum erat.¹²

Servius Tullius duās filiās, alteram ferōcem, alteram

¹ 306, with note. ² 201, a. ³ 334. ⁴ *having risen* (from orior).

⁵ 321, i.

⁶ *adgreditur ad*, turns to or begins.

⁷ 336.

⁸ *cēnsa* (323, n. 2) = *to have been enrolled*.

⁹ *for* = *to accommodate*.

¹⁰ *et ipsī* = *they, too*.

¹¹ *the head of affairs* = *the mistress of the world*.

¹² 371, b.

mitem, habēbat. Duo quoque Tarquini Prisci filii longē disparēs mōribus erant. Forte accidit ut Tullia ferōx Tarquiniō miti nūberet; Tullia mitis Tarquiniō ferōci. Sed ferōx Tullia mitem virum mox dēspiciēbat et alterum Tarquinium mirābātur. Ita Lūcius Tarquinius et Tullia minor, 5 cum morte domōs vacuās, novō mātirimōniō fēcissent, iunguntur nūptiis. Statim Tarquinius, quī postea Superbus appellātus est, ā Tulliā incitātus, convocātō senātū rēgnū petere coepit. Quā rē auditā, Servius ad cūriam properāvit. “Quid hōc,” inquit, “Tarquini,¹ rei² est? Quā tū audāciā 10 mē vivō³ vocāre ausus es⁴ patrēs?” Cum ille ferōciter respondisset, clāmor oritur et concursus populī fiēbat in cūriam. Tum Tarquinius viribus validior arripit Servium, atque ē cūriā per⁵ gradūs dēicit. Inde prope exsanguis fugiēns⁶ interficitur. Tullia carpentō in forum invecta 15 ēvocāvit virum ē cūriā, rēgemque prima appellāvit. Ā quō iussa ex tantō tumultū discēdere cum domum rediret, is quī carpentum agēbat subitō restitit pavidus iacentemque⁷ Servium trucidātum ostendit. Foedum inhūmānumque inde trāditur scelus. Nam amēns⁸ Tullia per patris corpus 20 carpentum ēgit. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.

REIGN OF TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS, B. C. 534-510

451. Ubi Tarquinius rēgnāre coepit, principēs civitātis, quōs Serviō fāvisse crēdebāt, interfēcit et armātōs circum sē habēbat. Neque enim ad iūs rēgnī quicquam⁹ praeter vim 25 habēbat quod neque populī iussū neque auctōritāte patrum

¹ 44, c. ² *what of business (188) is this? = what does this mean?*

³ *me alive = while I am living (334).*

⁴ 487.

⁵ *down over.*

⁶ *fleeing = attempting to flee.*

⁷ **iacentem**, *lying (dead) = as he lay (dead in the street).*

⁸ *out of her mind, frenzied, unnatural, cruel.*

⁹ *For not anything for the right of the throne had he = he had no right to, etc.*

rēgnābat. Itaque, cum in voluntāte civium nihil spei repō-
nere posset, metū¹ rēgnū retinuit atque imperium sine
cōnsiliō per sē solum exercēbat. Aliōs inimicōs occidit,
aliōs in exsilium ēgit. Mōrem senātum cōsulendi solvit ;
5 bellum, pācem, foedera, quibuscum voluit, fēcit. Latinōrum
sibi maximē gentem conciliābat, ut peregrinīs quoque opi-
bus² tūtior inter civis esset ; Mamiliō, principi Latinōrum,
filiam nūptum³ dat. Iam magna Tarquinī auctōritās inter
Latinōs erat. Ita renovātum est id foedus, quō rēs omnis
10 Albāna cum colōniis suis in Rōmānum cessit imperium.

Cum iniūstus esset in pāce rēx, tamen dux bellī audāx
fuit ; eā arte aequāset⁴ superiōrēs rēgēs, nisi dēgener in
aliis fuisset. Is primus Volscis bellum intulit Pōmētiamque
ex his vī cēpit. Captivā praedā magnificum illum templum
15 Iovis inchoāvit. Deinde Gabiōs, propinquam urbem, nēquī-
quam vī adortus, fraude ac dolō adgressus est. Nam, cum
sē bellum pōnere⁵ simulāret, Sextum filium Gabiōs misit.
Sextus benignē ab Gabinīs excipitur, quod patris superbiae
vitandae causā sē vēnisse simulāvit. Ita Gabinīs persuādet
20 ut bellum contrā rēgem redintegret et efficit ut ipse dux
belli legātur. Tum sēcrētō nūntium Rōmam ad patrem
mittit rogātum quid sē facere vellet. Rēx in hortum am-
bulāvit sequente nūntiō fili ; ibi tacitus summa papāverum
capita dicitur baculō dēcussisse, neque ullam vōcem ēmis-
25 sisse. Nūntius Gabiōs rediit et quid vidisset nūntiāvit.
Sextus, quid vellet parēns, intellēxit et multōs principēs
civitātis interfēcit. Eōrum bona inter multitudinem dīvisit.
Itaque largitiōne populus conciliātus est dōnec orba cōnsi-
liō⁶ auxiliōque Gabina rēs rēgī Rōmānō sine ullā dīmīcā-
30 tiōne trāditur.

Inde ad negōtia urbāna mentem convertit. In perficiendō
templō Iovis summā pecūniā⁷ atque operis plēbis ūsus est.

¹ by fear = by inspiring fear.

⁵ was laying aside = ending.

² 141.

⁶ 379.

³ 321.

⁷ 366.

⁴ 424.

Fabrōs ex Etrūriā arcessivit. Forōs in circō fēcit cloācamque maximam, receptāculum omnium purgāmentōrum urbis sub terrā ēgit ; quibus duōbus operibus¹ vix quicquam novum adaequāre potest. Rēx Rōmānus iam magnificentiā pūblicōrum operum exhauriēbātur, atque ut praedā² potirētur 5 Ardeam vī oppugnāvit. Hanc urbem dum oppugnat, negōtium³ ei domī contrahitur. Nam eius filius Lucrētiae, coniugi Tarquinī Collātini, vim⁴ fēcerat. Illa maesta⁵ sē occidit in cōspectū virī patrisque, obtestāta eōs **ut hanc iniūriam** ulciscerentur. Hanc ob causam et propter superbiam ipsius 10 rēgis L. Brūtus, Collātinus, aliūque cum incēnsō populō ēgērunt⁶ ut imperium rēgī⁷ abrogāret, exsulēsque⁸ esse iubēret L. Tarquinius cum coniuge ac liberis. L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quīnque et vigintī. Ita Rōmae septem rēgēs rēgnāvērunt annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā 15 trēs. Duo cōsulēs inde creātī sunt, L. Jūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātinus.

¹ 341.

² 366.

³ *trouble is heaped upon him.*

⁴ *had done violence to.*

⁵ *sad = in grief.*

⁶ *acted with . . . so that = prevailed upon . . . to.*

⁷ The dative after a verb meaning *take away* may often be translated by *from*.

⁸ Plural because **Tarquinius cum coniuge** = *Tarquinius and his wife*.

EXTRACTS FROM OVID

SCANSION

THERE are many metres used by Latin poets. That of the extracts in this book is called Elegiac, and consists of two kinds of line; the longer is known as a **Hexameter** (*i. e.*, a *six* measure), the shorter as a **Pentameter** (*i. e.*, a *five* measure).

The groundwork of the line is the **foot**. A foot always begins with a heavy syllable (or, as it is usually called, a long syllable) on which the accent falls, and is followed either by one syllable of equal weight, or by two light, or short, syllables. If a foot consists of two heavy syllables, it is called a **spondee**, and is marked thus: *hōstēs*; if it consists of a heavy syllable followed by two light syllables, it is called a **dactyl**, thus: *mīlītē*.

A Hexameter consists of six of these feet. The last must be a spondee. The last but one must be a dactyl. The rest may be either spondees or dactyls:

Nōn₁ mīlītē₂ | sērvō|rūm₃, cōmī|tēs₄ nōn | cūrā lē|gēndī₅₆

A Pentameter consists of two and a half feet twice over:

Nōn āp|tāē₁ prōfū|gō₂_½ || vēstīs₃ ō|pīs|vē₄ fū|it_½

In the Pentameter the second half must consist of dactyls, and there must also be a sharp division between the two portions of the line.

Similarly, the Hexameter should have a sharp division (called a **Cæsura**) after the first syllable of the third foot.

Occasionally this is found after the second syllable when the third foot is a dactyl:

Tēlā₁ vī|rīs₂ ān|mīquē₃ || cā|dūnt₄, glādī|siquē₅ rē|mōtīs₆

but in these cases there is also a cæsura in the fourth foot.

The Value of Syllables

As a rule, the ear will tell which syllables are heavy (or long) and which are light (or short). A few guiding rules may, however, be given.¹ A vowel before *two* consonants is almost always long, thus: *nōvītēns*. A vowel before *one* consonant is short unless it happen to be naturally long, thus in the line:

Sūrgīt: hā|bēnt₂ gēmī|nī_{3 ½} || vīnculā₃ | nūllā₄ pē|dēs_½

-ni is naturally long. In this line we may notice that *h* does not count, and therefore *habent* practically begins with a vowel.² A little practice will soon enable the beginner to detect the value of a syllable.

Elision

If a word ending in a vowel, a diphthong, or a syllable concluded by *m* (as, *hastam*) come before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*, the final syllable of the first word is *elided*, or cut off. Thus the line (from Vergil):

Omnia praecepi atque animo mecum ante peregi

must be read thus:

Ōmnīā₁ | prāēcēp'₂ | ātqu'₃ ānīmō₄ mēc'₄ | āntē₅ pēr|ēgī₆

¹ In the middle of a word each syllable has a fixed value: e. g., ōra, dōmīnus, cūpīdo. The last vowel of a word frequently is short or long according to circumstances.

² If *habent* began with a real consonant, the last syllable of *surgit* would be long, with the result that the line would not *scan*, i. e., would not run smoothly.

SPRING

Tristia, III. 12, ll. 5-12.

Iam violam puerique legunt hilaresque puellae,
 rustica quae nullo nata¹ serente² venit;
 prataque pubescunt variorum flore colorum,
 indocilique loquax gutture vernat³ avis;
 utque malae matris crimen deponat,⁴ hirundo
 sub trabibus cunas tectaque parva facit;
 herbaque, quae latuit Cerealibus obruta sulcis,
 exit et expandit molle cacumen humo.

HOW TO BAN A GHOST

Fasti, V. ll. 381-396.

Nox ubi iam media est somnoque silentia praebet,
 et canis⁵ et variae⁶ conticuistis aves,⁵
 ille memor veteris ritus timidusque deorum
 surgit; habent gemini vincula⁷ nulla pedes:
 signaque dat, digitis medio cum pollice iunctis,⁸
 occurrat⁹ tacito ne levis umbra sibi.
 cumque manus puras fontana perluit unda,
 vertitur, et nigras accipit ante fabas,
 aversusque iacit; sed dum iacit, 'hacc ego mitto,
 his,' inquit, 'redimo meque meosque fabis.'
 hoc noviens dicit, nec respicit. umbra putatur
 colligere, et nullo terga vidente sequi.
 rursus aquam tangit, Temesaeaque concrepat aera,
 et rogat, ut tectis exeat¹⁰ umbra suis.
 cum dixit noviens, 'manes exite paterni,'
 respicit, et pure sacra peracta putat.

¹ *rustica nata*, in apposition to *quae*.² *nullo serente* (333).³ *i. e.* begins its spring song.⁴ 272.⁵ Vocative.⁶ = *of varied note*.⁷ *i. e.*, shoes.⁸ *i. e.*, snaps his fingers to let the ghost know he is there.⁹ 273.¹⁰ 398 a.

THE FOUNDING OF ROME

I

Fasti, IV. ll. 735-752.

Iam luerat poenas frater Numitoris, et omne
 pastorum gemino sub duce volgus erat.
 contrahere¹ agrestes et moenia ponere¹ utrique
 convenit. ambigitur, moenia ponat² uter.
 'nil opus est,' dixit, 'certamine,' Romulus, 'ullo :
 magna fides avium est, experiamur³ aves.'
 res placet : alter adit nemorosi saxa Palati :
 alter Aventinum mane cacumen init.
 sex Remus, hic volucres bis sex videt ordine : pacto
 statur,⁴ et arbitrium Romulus urbis habet.
 apta dies legitur, qua moenia signet⁵ aratro.
 sacra Palis suberant ; inde movetur opus.
 fossa fit ad solidum,⁶ fruges iaciuntur in ima⁷
 et de vicino terra petita⁸ solo.
 fossa repletur humo, plenaeque imponitur ara,
 et novus accenso fungitur⁹ igne focus.
 inde premens stivam designat moenia sulco
 alba iugum niveo cum bove vacca tulit.

II

Fasti, IV. ll. 753-760.

Vox fuit haec régis : 'condenti, Iuppiter, urbem,
 et genitor Mavors, Vestaque mater, ades,¹⁰
 quosque pium est adhibere deos, advertite cuncti :¹¹
 auspicibus vobis hoc mihi surgat¹² opus.

¹ Subject to **convenit**.² 398.³ Subjunct. for imperat. = *let us try*.⁴ Impersonal = *they stand*.⁵ 335.⁶ *i. e.*, to the solid rock.⁷ Supply **fossa**.⁸ Supply **est**.⁹ 366.¹⁰ 341.¹¹ = **o cuncti dei, quos . . . adhibere, advertite**.¹² Subjunct. for imperat.

longa sit ¹ huic aetas dominaeque ² potentia terrae ;³
 sitque ¹ sub hac oriens occiduusque dies.
 ille precabatur, tonitru dedit omina laevo
 Iuppiter, et laevo fulmina missa polo.

III

Fasti, IV. ll. 761-774.

Augurio laeti iaciunt fundamina cives,
 et novus exiguo tempore murus erat.
 hoc Celer urget opus, quem Romulus ipse vocarat ;⁴
 'sint' ⁵ que, 'Celer, curae,' dixerat, 'ista tuae.
 neve ⁶ quis aut muros, aut factam vomere fossam
 transeat,⁵ audentem ⁷ talia ⁸ dede neci.'
 quod Remus ignorans, humiles contemnere muros
 coepit, et, 'his populus,' dicere, 'tutus erit ?'
 nec mora, transiit. rutro Celer occupat ausum,⁹
 ille premit duram sanguinolentus humum.
 haec ubi rex didicit, lacrimas introrsus obortas
 devorat et clausum pectore vulnus habet.
 flere palam non vult ¹⁰ exemplaue fortia servat,
 'sic' que 'meos muros transeat ⁵ hostis,' ait.

THE SABINE WOMEN PREVENT A BATTLE BETWEEN
 THEIR FATHERS AND THEIR HUSBANDS

Fasti, III. ll. 201-220.

("Stant acies : sed utra di ¹¹ sint ¹² pro parte rogandi,
 eligite : hinc coniunx, hinc pater arma tenet.
 quaerendum est, viduae fieri ¹³ malimus,¹² an orbae.¹⁴
 consilium vobis forte piumque dabo.")

¹ Subjunct. for imperat.

² Dat. in apposition to **huic**.

³ Gen. after **dominae**.

⁴ = **vocaverat**.

⁵ Subjunct. for imperat.

⁶ = **et nē quis . . .** = *and let no one*.

⁷ Obj. to **dēde**.

⁸ Obj. to **audentem**.

⁹ Has active meaning.

¹⁰ 481.

¹¹ Nom. plur. of **deus**.

¹² 287.

¹³ 484.

¹⁴ The order is : (**utrum**) **malimus fieri viduae an orbae**.

consilium dederat : ¹ parent, crinesque resolvunt,
 maestaque funerea corpora veste tegunt.
 iam steterant acies ferro mortique ² paratae ;
 iam lituus pugnae signa daturus erat ;
 cum raptae veniunt inter patresque virosque,
 inque sinu natos, pignora cara, tenent.
 ut medium campi scissis tetigere ³ capillis,
 in terram posito procubere ⁴ genu ;
 et, quasi sentirent, blando clamore nepotes
 tendebant ad avos brachia parva suos.
 qui poterat, clamabat avum, tunc denique visum ;
 et qui vix poterat, posse coactus ⁵ erat.
 tela viris animique cadunt, gladiisque remotis
 dant soceri generis accipiuntque manus ;
 laudatasque tenent natas, scutoque nepotem
 fert avus : hic scuti dulcior usus erat.

TARQUINIUS AND SEXTUS

Fasti II. ll. 545-552.

Hortus odoratis suberat cultissimus herbis,
 sectus humum rivo lene ⁶ sonantis aquae.
 illic Tarquinius mandata latentia nati
 accipit, et virga lilia summa metit.
 nuntius ut rediit, decussaque lilia dixit,
 filius, 'agnosco iussa parentis,' ait.
 nec mora ; principibus caesis ex urbe Gabina,
 traduntur ducibus moenia nuda suis.

THE SIEGE OF ROME: JUPITER'S ADVICE

Fasti, VI. ll. 317-326.

Iam ducibus somnum dederat ⁷ labor : increpat illos
 Iuppiter et sacro, quid velit, ⁸ ore docet :

¹ Subject, *she* ; the speaker is the wife of Romulus.

² 264.

³ = *tetigērunt*, from *tangō*.

⁴ = *prōcubuērunt* : add *se*.

⁵ From *cōgō*.

⁶ Adj. used as adverb.

⁷ From *dō*, *dare*.

⁸ 398.

‘surgite, et in medios de summis arcibus hostes
mittite, quam minime perdere vultis, opem.’
somnus abit, quaeruntque novis ambagibus acti,
perdere quam nolint¹ et iubeantur¹ opem.
esse Ceres visa est. iaciunt Cerealia dona,
iacta super galeas scutaque longa sonant.
posse fame vinci² spes excidit : hoste repulso
candida Pistori ponitur ara Iovi.

THEN, AND NOW

Fasti, l. ll. 197-212.

Pluris³ opes nunc sunt, quam prisci temporis annis,
dum populus pauper, dum nova Roma fuit,
dum casa Martigenam capiebat parva Quirinum,
et dabat exiguum fluminis ulva torum.
Iuppiter angusta vix totus stabat in aede,
inque Iovis dextra fictile fulmen erat.
frondibus ornabant, quae nunc Capitolia gemmis ;⁴
pascebatque suas ipse senator oves :
nec pudor⁵ in stipula placidam cepisse quietem,
et faenum capiti supposuisse fuit.
iura dabat populis posito modo praetor aratro,
et levis argenti lamina crimen erat.
at postquam fortuna loci caput extulit⁶ huius,
et tetigit⁷ summo vertice Roma deos,
creverunt⁸ et opes et opum furiosa cupido,
et, cum possideant⁹ plurima, plura petunt.

¹ 398.² **eos posse famē vinci**, in apposition to **spes**.³ = *of more* (account).⁴ Order is : **ornabant frondibus Capitolia, quae nunc (ornant) gemmis**.⁵ Supply **fuit**.⁶ From **ex(ef)-ferō**.⁷ From **tangō**.⁸ From **crescō**.⁹ 279.

SCREECH OWLS

Fasti, VI. ll. 111-122.

Sunt avidae volucres ; non quae ¹ Phineia mensis
 guttura fraudabant, sed genus inde trahunt.
 grande caput, stantes oculi, rostra apta rapinae ; ²
 canities pennis, unguibus hamus inest.
 nocte volant, puerosque petunt nutricis ³ egentes,
 et vitiant cunis corpora rapta suis.
 carpere dicuntur lactentia viscera ⁴ rostris,
 et plenum poto sanguine guttur habent.
 est illis strigibus nomen ; sed nominis huius
 causa, quod horrendum ⁵ stridere nocte solent.
 sive igitur nascuntur aves, seu carmine fiunt,
 naeniaque in volucres falsa figurat anus.

THE MISCHIEVOUS BOY OF CARSEOLUM

Fasti, IV. ll. 623-642.

‘ Hoc ’ ait ‘ in campo ’ — campumque ostendit — ‘ habebat
 rus*breve cum duro parca colona viro.
 ille suam peragebat humum, sive usus aratri,
 seu curvae falcis, sive bidentis erat.
 haec modo verrebat stantem tibicine⁷ villam,
 nunc matris plumis ova fovenda dabat ;
 aut virides malvas, aut fungos colligit albos,
 aut humilem grato calfacit igne focum.
 et tamen assiduus exercet brachia telis,
 adversusque minas frigoris arma parat.
 filius huius erat primo lascivus in aevo,
 addideratque annos ad duo lustra duos. ’

¹ = *not those which* . . . (*i. e.*, Harpies, that snatched the food from the mouth of Phineus).

² 264. ³ 389.

⁵ Adj. used as adverb.

⁴ = **viscera eorum qui lactent.**

• = **farm.**

⁷ Sing. for plur.

is capit extremi vulpem convalle salicti ;
 abstulerat ¹ multas illa cohortis ² aves.
 captivam stipula faenoque involvit, et ignes
 admovet ; urentes effugit illa manus.
 qua fugit, incendit vestitos messibus agros ;
 damnosis vires ignibus aura dabat.
 factum abiit, monimenta manent ; nam vivere captam
 nunc quoque lex vulpem Carseolana vetat.'

ON THE EVE OF EXILE

Tristia, I. 3, ll. 1-26.

Cum subit illius tristissima noctis imago,
 qua mihi supremum tempus in Urbe fuit,
 cum repeto noctem, qua tot mihi cara reliqui,
 labitur ex oculis nunc quoque gutta meis.
 iam prope lux aderat, qua me discedere Caesar
 finibus extremæ iusserat Ausoniae.
 nec spatium fuerat, nec mens satis apta ³ parandi ; ⁴
 torpuerant longa pectora nostra mora.
 non mihi servorum, ⁵ comites ⁶ non cura legendi, ⁶
 non aptae profugo vestis opisve fuit.
 non aliter stupui, quam qui Iovis ignibus ictus
 vivit et est vitæ nescius ipse suæ.
 ut tamen hanc animi nubem dolor ipse removit,
 et tandem sensus convaluere ⁷ mei,
 alloquor extremum ⁸ maestos abiturus amicos
 qui modo de multis unus et alter erant.
 uxor amans flentem flens acrius ipsa tenebat,
 imbre per indignas usque cadente genas.
 nata procul Libycis aberat diversa sub oris,
 nec poterat fati certior esse mei.

¹ From **au (abs)-ferō**.

² *i. e.*, the farmyard.

³ Obj. to **parandi**.

⁴ After **spatium** and **mens**.

⁵ After **cura**.

⁶ Obj. to **legendi**.

⁷ = **convaluerunt**.

⁸ **adverb.**

quocumque aspiceres, luctus gemitusque sonabant,
 formaque non taciti funeris intus erat.
 femina virque meo, pueri quoque, funere maerent,
 inque domo lacrimas angulus omnis habet :
 si licet exemplis¹ in parvis grandibus¹ uti,
 haec facies Troiae, cum caperetur, erat.

OVID'S PLACE OF BANISHMENT

Tristia, III. 10, ll. 5-24.

Sauromatae cingunt, fera gens, Bessique Getaeque,
 quam non ingenio² nomina³ digna meo !
 dum tamen aura tepet, medio defendimur Histro :
 ille suis liquidus bella repellit aquis.
 at cum tristis hiems squalentia protulit ora,
 terraque marmoreo est candida facta gelu,
 dum parat et Boreas et nix habitare sub Arcto
 tum patet has gentes axe tremente premi.
 nix iacet, et iactam ne sol pluviaeque resolvant⁴
 indurat Boreas perpetuamque facit.
 ergo ubi deliquit⁵ nondum prior, altera venit,
 et solet in multis bima manere locis.
 tantaque commoti vis est Aquilonis, ut altas
 aequet humo turres tectaque rapta ferat.⁶
 pellibus et sutis arcent mala frigora braccis,
 oraque de toto corpore sola patent.
 saepe sonant moti glacie pendente capilli,
 et nitet inducto candida barba gelu ;
 nudaque consistunt, formam servantia testae,
 vina, nec hausta meri, sed data⁷ frusta bibunt.

¹ 366.

² Abl. after *dignus*.

³ The order is : *nōmina quam non digna ingenio meo*.

⁴ 272.

⁵ From *dēliquescō*.

⁶ 280.

⁷ *i. e.*, handed to them.

ULYSSES WAS MORE FORTUNATE THAN OVID

Tristia, I. 5, ll. 59-72.

Ille brevi spatio¹ multis erravit in annis
inter Dulichias Iliacasque domos :
nos freta sideribus totis distantia² mensos³
sors tulit⁴ in Geticos Sarmaticosque sinus.
ille habuit fidamque manum sociosque fideles ;
me profugum comites deseruere⁵ mei.
ille suam laetus patriam victorque petebat ;
a patria fugi victus et exul ego.
nec mihi Dulichium domus est Ithaceve Samosve,
poena quibus non est grandis abesse locis :^{6,7}
sed quae de septem totum circumspicit orbem
montibus,⁸ imperii Roma⁹ deumque¹⁰ locus.
illi corpus erat durum patiensque laborum ;¹¹
invalidae vires ingenuaeque mihi.

A STORM

Tristia, I. 2, ll. 19-34.

Me miserum, quanti montes volvuntur aquarum !
iam iam tacturos sidera summa¹² putes.
quantae diducto subsidunt aequore valles !
iam iam tacturas Tartara nigra putes.
quocumque aspicio, nihil est nisi pontus et aër,
fluctibus hic tumidus, nubibus ille minax.
inter utrumque¹³ fremunt immani murmure venti :
nescit, cui domino¹⁴ pareat,¹⁵ unda maris.

¹ = within a narrow compass.² *i. e.*, whole constellations apart.³ From *mētior*.⁴ 483.⁵ 98.⁶ 379.⁷ The order is : *abesse quibus locis non est grandis poena*.⁸ With *de septem*.⁹ The order is : *sed Roma, quae . . . montibus, locus, etc.*¹⁰ = *deōrumque*.¹¹ 390.¹² Obj. to *tacturos* = *the stars on high*.¹³ From *uterque*.¹⁴ 360.¹⁵ 287.

nam modo purpureo vires capit Eurus ab ortu,
 nunc Zephyrus sero vespere missus adest,
 nunc sicca gelidus Boreas bacchatur ab Arcto,
 nunc Notus adversa proelia fronte gerit.
 rector in incerto est, nec quid fugiatve¹ petatve¹
 invenit : ambiguis ars stupet ipsa malis.
 scilicet occidimus, nec spes est ulla salutis,
 dumque loquor, voltus obruit unda meos.

SILENUS AND THE HONEY

Fasti, III. ll. 703-718.

Ut satyri levisque senex tetigere² saporem,
 quaerebant flavos per nemus omne favos.
 audit in exesa stridorem examinis ulmo,
 aspicit et ceras dissimulatque senex ;
 utque piger pandi tergo residebat aselli,
 applicat hunc ulmo corticibusque cavis.
 constitit³ ipse super ramoso stipite nixus,⁴
 atque avide trunco condita mella petit.
 milia crabronum coëunt, et vertice nudo
 spicula defigunt, oraque summa notant.
 ille cadit praeceps et calce feritur aselli,
 inclamatque suos, auxiliumque rogat.
 concurrunt satyri, turgentiaque ora parentis
 rident : percusso⁵ claudicat ille genu.
 ridet et ipse deus,⁶ limumque inducere monstrat ;⁷
 hic paret monitis⁸ et linit ora luto.

¹ 287.² = **tetigērunt**, from **tangō** ; 98.³ From **con-sistō**.⁴ From **nitor**.⁵ From **per-cutiō**.⁶ *i. e.*, Bacchus.⁷ **monstrat** + infin. = *shows him (how) to*.⁸ 360.

HERCULES AND CACUS

Fasti, I. ll. 497-528.

Mane erat : excussus¹ somno Tiryntius hospes
 de numero tauros sensit abesse duos.
 nulla videt quaerens taciti vestigia furti :
 traxerat aversos Cacus in antra feros :
 Cacus, Aventinae timor atque infamia silvae,
 non leve finitimis hospitibusque malum.
 dira viro facies,² vires pro corpore, corpus
 grande : pater monstri Mulciber huius erat :
 proque domo longis spelunca² recessibus ingens
 abdita, vix ipsis invenienda feris.³
 ora super postes affixaque brachia pendent,
 squalidaque humanis ossibus albet humus.
 servata male⁴ parte boum Iove natus⁵ abibas ;
 mugitum rauco furta dedere⁶ sono.
 'accipio revocamen,' ait, vocemque secutus
 impia per silvas victor ad antra venit.
 ille aditum fracti praestruxerat obice montis ;
 vix iuga movissent⁷ quinque bis illud opus.
 nititur hic umeris,—caelum quoque sederat illis,—
 et vastum motu collabefactat onus.
 quod simul evolsum⁸ est, fragor aethera terruit ipsum,
 ictaque subsedit pondere molis humus.
 prima movet Cacus collata⁹ proelia dextra,
 remque ferox saxis stipitibusque gerit.
 quis¹⁰ ubi nil agitur, patrias male fortis¹¹ ad artes
 confugit, et flammās ore sonante vomit.

¹ From **ex-cutiō**.² Supply **erat**.³ 313.⁴ Adv. with **servata**.⁵ *thou (who wast) born from Jupiter ; i. e., Hercules.*⁶ Perf. of **dō, dare** ; 98.⁷ 424 b.⁸ From **e-vellō**.⁹ 483.¹⁰ = **quibus**.¹¹ With **fortis**, like **male** — **servata** above.

quas quotiens proflat, spirare Typhoëa credas,¹
et rapidum Aetnaeo fulgur ab igne iaci.
occupat Alcides, adductaque clava trinodis
ter quater adversi sedit² in ore viri.
ille cadit, mixtosque vomit cum sanguine fumos,
et lato moriens pectore plangit humum.

¹ 423, 2, a.

² *i. e.*, fell, was delivered.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, ETC.

NOUNS

452. NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

Stem in **-ā-**

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puella	-a	puellae	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	puellam	-am	puellās	-ās
<i>Gen.</i>	puellae	-ae	puellārum	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	puellae	-ae	puellis	-is
<i>Abl.</i>	puellā	-ā	puellis	-is

453. NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

Stem in **-ō-**

				TERMINATIONS		
SINGULAR				MAS.	NEU.	
<i>Nom.</i>	servus	filius	bellum	cōnsilium	-us	-um
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	filium	bellum	cōnsilium	-um	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	filii	bellī	cōnsilii	-ī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	filiō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	filiō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	
PLURAL						
<i>Nom.</i>	servī	filiī	bella	cōnsilia	-ī	-a
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs	filiōs	bella	cōnsilia	-ōs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum	filiōrum	bellōrum	cōnsiliōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs	filiīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs	filiīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of **servus** is **serve** ; of **filius** is **fili**.

Nouns in **-er** and **-ir**

SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	—
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

454. NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

a. Consonant Stems: Mutes

SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS M. AND F. NEU.	
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	miles	prīnceps	caput	-s or — —
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	militem	prīncipem	caput	-em —
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	militis	prīncipis	capitis	-is -is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	militī	prīncipī	capitī	-ī -ī
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	militē	prīncipe	capite	-e -e

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	militēs	prīncipēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	militēs	prīncipēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	militum	prīncipum	capitum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	militibus	prīncipibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	militibus	prīncipibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

b. Liquid Stems

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsul	legiō	homō	pater
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	legiōnem	hominem	patrem
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	legiōnis	hominis	patris
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulī	legiōnī	hominī	patri
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	legiōne	homine	patre

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulūm	legiōnum	hominūm	patrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus

Neuters

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminis	generis	corporis	itineris
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminī	generī	corporī	itinerī
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmine	genere	corpore	itine

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinerā
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinerā
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminum	generum	corporum	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus
<i>Abl.</i>	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus

c. i-Stems

SINGULAR

TERMINATIONS
M. AND F.

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	turris	vīs	imber	-is
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	turrim, -em	vim	imbrem	-em, -im
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	turris	vīs	imbris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	turrī	vī	imbrī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	turrī, -e	vī	imbrī, -e	-ī, -e

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	turrēs	vīrēs	imbrēs	-ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	hostīs, -ēs	turrīs, -ēs	vīrīs, -ēs	imbrīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	turrium	vīrium	imbrium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	turribus	viribus	imbribus	-ibus

Avis, cīvis, finis, nāvis, often have **-ī** in the ablative singular.

INTRODUCTORY LATIN

Neuters				TERMINATIONS
SINGULAR				NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	mare	animal	calcar	—
<i>Acc.</i>	mare	animal	calcar	—
<i>Gen.</i>	maris	animālis	calcāris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Acc.</i>	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	marium ¹	animālium	calcārium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	maribus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	maribus	animālībus	calcārībus	-ibus

d. Mixed i-Stems

SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	arx	cliēns	cīvitās
<i>Acc.</i>	caedem	arcem	clientem	cīvitātem
<i>Gen.</i>	caedis	arcis	clientis	cīvitātis
<i>Dat.</i>	caedī	arcī	clientī	cīvitātī
<i>Abl.</i>	caede	arce	cliente	cīvitāte
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	caedēs	arcēs	clientēs	cīvitātēs
<i>Acc.</i>	caedīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	clientīs, -ēs	cīvitātīs, -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	caedium	arcium	clientium	cīvitātum (-ium)
<i>Dat.</i>	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus
<i>Abl.</i>	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus

455. NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem in -u-

				TERMINATIONS	
SINGULAR				M. AND F.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	manus	lacus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	manum	lacum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	manūs	lacūs	cornūs	-us	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	manūī	lacūī	cornūī	-uī	-ūī
<i>Abl.</i>	manū	lacū	cornū	-ū	-ū

¹ The genitive plural of **mare** is once written **marum**.

		PLURAL		TERMINATIONS	
				M. AND F.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Acc.</i>	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	manuum	lacuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus
<i>Abl.</i>	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus

456. NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem in -ē-				
		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	planitiēs	-ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	planitiem	-em
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	reī	planitiēī	-eī, -ēī
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	reī	planitiēī	-eī, -ēī
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	planitiē	-ē
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs		-ēs
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs		-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum		-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus

457. Special Paradigms

SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	domus	Iuppiter
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	domum	Iovem
<i>Gen.</i>	dei	domūs, domī	Iovis
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	domuī, domō	Iovī
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	domō, domū	Iove

PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	dei (diī), dī	domūs	
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	domōs, domūs	
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deum	domuum (domōrum)	
<i>Dat.</i>	deīs (diīs), dīs	domibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	deīs (diīs), dīs	domibus	

458.

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR						
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum			
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum			
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī			
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō			
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō			
PLURAL						
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona			
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona			
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum			
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs			
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs			
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	miser	misera	miserum	aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Acc.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

459. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR				
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	prūdēns	prūdēns	audāx	audāx
<i>Acc.</i>	prudentem	prūdēns	audācem	audāx
<i>Gen.</i>	prudentis	prudentis	audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i>	prudentī	prudentī	audācī	audācī
<i>Abl.</i>	prudentī	prudentī	audācī	audācī
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	prudentēs	prudentia	audācēs	audācia
<i>Acc.</i>	prudentēs, -is	prudentia	audācēs, -is	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	prudentium	prudentium	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	prudentibus	prudentibus	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Abl.</i>	prudentibus	prudentibus	audācibus	audācibus

SINGULAR				
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus	omnis	omne
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus	omnem	omne
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris	omnis	omnis
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī	omnī	omnī
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere	vetere	omnī	omnī
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	veterēs	vetera	omnēs	omnia
<i>Acc.</i>	veterēs	vetera	omnēs, -īs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i>	veterum	veterum	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i>	veteribus	veteribus	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Abl.</i>	veteribus	veteribus	omnibus	omnibus

SINGULAR			
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

460.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

SINGULAR				
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	laudāns	laudāns	iēns	iēns
<i>Acc.</i>	laudantem	laudāns	euntem	iēns
<i>Gen.</i>	laudantis	laudantis	euntis	euntis
<i>Dat.</i>	laudantī	laudantī	euntī	euntī
<i>Abl.</i>	laudante	laudante	eunte	eunte

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	laudantēs	laudantia	euntēs	euntia
<i>Acc.</i>	laudantīs, -ēs	laudantia	euntīs, -ēs	euntia
<i>Gen.</i>	laudantium	laudantium	euntium	euntium
<i>Dat.</i>	laudantibus	laudantibus	euntibus	euntibus
<i>Abl.</i>	laudantibus	laudantibus	euntibus	euntibus

461.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

SINGULAR

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	neuter	neutra	neutrum
<i>Acc.</i>	aliū	aliā	aliud	neutrum	neutram	neutrum
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	neutrius	neutrius	neutrius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō

Plural is regular like **bonus** (458).

Plural is regular.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, -is	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnus	ūnus	ūnus	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	mille	mīlia
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus

462.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

SINGULAR

	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius		plūs
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrem	altius		plūs
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōris	altiōris		plūris
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōrī	altiōrī		—
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōre	altiōre		plūre

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	altiōrēs	altiōra	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Acc.</i>	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	altiōrum	altiōrum	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	altiōribus	altiōribus	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Abl.</i>	altiōribus	altiōribus	plūribus	plūribus

463. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	altior	altissimus
fortis	fortior	fortissimus
audāx	audācior	audācissimus
potēns	potentior	potentissimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus
aeger	aegrior	aegerrimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus
similis	similior	simillimus
dissimilis	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis	humilior	humillimus

464. a. Irregular Comparison

bonus, <i>good</i>	mellior, <i>better</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
malus, <i>bad</i>	peior, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	maior, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, <i>less</i>	minimus, <i>least</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, <i>most</i>

b. Adjectives with no Positive

[cis, citrā, adv., <i>on this side</i>]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[dē, prep., <i>down</i>]	dēterior, <i>lower, worse, inferior</i>	dēterrīmus, <i>worst</i>
[in, intrā, prep., <i>in, within</i>]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[prae, prō, prep., <i>before</i>]	prior, <i>former</i>	primus, <i>first</i>

467.

NUMERALS

Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman Numerals
1 ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	I
2 duo, duae, duo	secundus <i>or</i> alter	II
3 trēs, tria	tertius	III
4 quattuor	quārtus	IV
5 quīnque	quīntus	V
6 sex	sextus	VI
7 septem	septimus	VII
8 octō	octāvus	VIII
9 novem	nōnus	IX
10 decem	decīmus	X
11 ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12 duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13 tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII
14 quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIV
15 quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16 sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17 septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18 duodēvigintī	duodēvīcēsimus	XVIII
19 ūndēvigintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	XIX
20 vīgintī	vīcēsimus	XX
21 vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsimus	XXI
22 vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	vīcēsimus secundus <i>or</i> alter et vīcēsimus	XXII
28 duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus	XXVIII
29 ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus	XXIX
30 trīgintā	trīcēsimus	XXX
40 quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	XL
50 quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	L
60 sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	LX
70 septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	LXX
80 octōgintā	octōgēsimus	LXXX
90 nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	XC
100 centum	centēsimus	C
101 centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus <i>or</i> centēsimus et prīmus	CI

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman Numerals
200	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	CC
300	trecentī	trecentēsimus	CCC
400	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	CCCC
500	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	D
600	sēscntī	sēscntēsimus	DC
700	septingentī	septingentēsimus	DCC
800	octingentī	octingentēsimus	DCCC
900	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	DCCCC
1000	mille	millēsimus	M
2000	duo milia	bis millēsimus	
100000	centum milia	centiēns millēsimus	

PRONOUNS

468.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

469.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.		MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id		eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eām	id		eōs	cās	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī		eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō		eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud		istī	istae	ista
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud		istōs	istās	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istīus	istīus	istīus		istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī		istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō		istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	{	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
					iīdem, īdem		
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	īdem		eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
					iīsdem	iīsdem	iīsdem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
					iīsdem	iīsdem	iīsdem
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum		ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum		ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī		ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

470.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	cūī	cūī	cūī	quibus	quibus	quibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

471.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	(cuius)	cuius	quorum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	(cui)	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	(quā)	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

472.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

	PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

	SINGULAR		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

	PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

473. FIRST CONJUGATION: *ā*-verbsLaudō, *praise*

Principal parts: laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

*I praise, am praising,
do praise*

laudō	laudāmus
laudās	laudātis
laudat	laudant

*Present**I am praised, am being praised*

laudor	laudāmur
laudāris (-re)	laudāminī
laudātur	laudantur

PASSIVE VOICE

*Future**I shall praise, etc.**I shall be praised*

laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis (-re)	laudābiminī
laudābitur	laudābuntur

*Imperfect**I praised, was praising,
did praise**I was praised, was being praised*

laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābāris (-re)	laudābāminī
laudābātur	laudābantur

*Perfect**I have praised, praised,
did praise**I have been praised, was praised*

laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt (-ēre)

laudātus	{ sum	laudātī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

*Future Perfect**I shall have praised**I shall have been praised*

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

laudātus	{ erō	laudātī	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

*Pluperfect**I had praised*

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

I had been praised

laudātus	{ eram	laudātī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

laudem	laudēmus	lauder	laudēmur
laudēs	laudētis	laudēris (-re)	laudēmini
laudet	laudent	laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

laudārem	laudārēmus	laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēs	laudārētis	laudārēris (-re)	laudārēmini
laudāret	laudārent	laudārētur	laudārentur

Perfect

laudāverim	laudāverimus	laudātus	{ sim	laudātī	{ sīmus
laudāveris	laudāveritis		{ sis		{ sītis
laudāverit	laudāverint		{ sit		{ sint

Pluperfect

laudāvīssem	laudāvīssēmus	laudātus	{ essem	laudātī	{ essēmus
laudāvīssēs	laudāvīssētis		{ essēs		{ essētis
laudāvīssset	laudāvīsssent		{ esset		{ essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

laudā, praise thou

laudāre, be thou praised

PLURAL

laudāte, praise ye

laudāmini, be ye praised

Future

SINGULAR

laudātō, thou shalt praise
 laudātō, he shall praise

laudātor, thou shalt be praised
 laudātor, he shall be praised

PLURAL

laudātōte, *ye shall praise* —laudantō, *they shall praise* laudantor, *they shall be praised*

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudāre, *to praise*laudārī, *to be praised*Perf. laudāvisse, *to have praised* laudātus esse, *to have been praised*Fut. laudātūrus esse, *to be about to praise* laudātum irī, *to be about to be praised*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. laudāns, *praising* —Perf. — laudātus, *having been praised, praised*Fut. laudātūrus, *about to praise* —

GERUND

Acc. laudandū, *praising*Gen. laudandī, *of praising*Dat. laudandō, *for praising*Abl. laudandō, *by praising*

GERUNDIVE

laudandus, *to be praised*

SUPINE

Acc. laudātum, *to praise*Abl. laudātū, *to praise*

474.

SYNOPSIS

(A model for all regular verbs)

Laudō

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

Pres. laudō

Fut. laudābō

Imperf. laudābam

Perf. laudāvī

F. P. laudāverō

Plup. laudāveram

PASSIVE VOICE

laudor

laudābor

laudābar

laudātus sum

laudātus erō

laudātus eram

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudem	lauder
<i>Imperf.</i>	laudārem	laudārer
<i>Perf.</i>	laudāverim	laudātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	laudāvissem	laudātus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudā	laudāre
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātō	laudātor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudāre	laudārī
<i>Perf.</i>	laudāvisse	laudātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus esse	laudātum irī

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	laudāns	
<i>Perf.</i>		laudātus
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus	

GERUND

laudandī

GERUNDIVE

laudandus

SUPINE

laudātum

475. Synopsis of the Periphrastic Conjugations

First, or Active, Periphrastic

Second, or Passive, Periphrastic

INDICATIVE

*I am about to praise (just ready to praise, likely to praise, etc.)**I am to be praised (must be praised, have to be praised, etc.)*

<i>Pres.</i>	laudātūrus sum	laudandus sum
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus erō	laudandus erō
<i>Impf.</i>	laudātūrus eram	laudandus eram
<i>Perf.</i>	laudātūrus fui	laudandus fui
<i>F. P.</i>	laudātūrus fuerō	laudandus fuerō
<i>Plup.</i>	laudātūrus fueram	laudandus fueram

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudātūrus sim	laudandus sim
<i>Impf.</i>	laudātūrus essem	laudandus essem
<i>Perf.</i>	laudātūrus fuerim	laudandus fuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	laudātūrus fuisset	laudandus fuisset

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudātūrus esse	laudandus esse
<i>Perf.</i>	laudātūrus fuisse	laudandus fuisse

So in the other conjugations :

monitūrus su	monendus sum
rēctūrus sum	regendus sum
captūrus sum	capiendus sum
audītūrus sum	audiendus sum

476. SECOND CONJUGATION : ē-verbs

Moneō, advise

Principal parts : moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		<i>Present</i>	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>		<i>I am advised, am being advised</i>	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris (-re)	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

Future

<i>I shall advise</i>		<i>I shall be advised</i>	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis (-re)	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

Imperfect

<i>I advised, was advising, did advise</i>		<i>I was advised, was being advised</i>	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris (-re)	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

*Perfect**I have advised, advised, did advise I have been advised, was advised*

monuī	monuimus	monitus	{ sum	monitī	{ sumus
monuistī	monuistis		{ es		{ estis
monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)		{ est		{ sunt

*Future Perfect**I shall have advised**I shall have been advised*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	{ erō	monitī	{ erimus
monueris	monueritis		{ eris		{ eritis
monuerit	monuerint		{ erit		{ erunt

*Pluperfect**I had advised**I had been advised*

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus	{ eram	monitī	{ erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis		{ erās		{ erātis
monuerat	monuerant		{ erat		{ erant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris (-re)	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneāntur

Imperfect

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

Perfect

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	{ sim	monitī	{ simus
monueris	monueritis		{ sis		{ sitis
monuerit	monuerint		{ sit		{ sint

Pluperfect

monuissē	monuissēmus	monitus	{ essem	monitī	{ essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		{ essēs		{ essētis
monuisset	monuissent		{ esset		{ essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

*monē, advise thou**monēre, be thou advised*

PLURAL

*monēte, advise ye**monēmini, be ye advised**Future*

SINGULAR

*monētō, thou shalt advise**monētor, thou shalt be advised**monētō, he shall advise**monētor, he shall be advised*

PLURAL

*monētōte, ye shall advise**monentō, they shall advise**monentor, they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE

*Pres. monēre, to advise**monērī, to be advised**Perf. monuisse, to have advised**monitus esse, to have been advised**Fut. monitūrus, esse, to be about to advise**monitum īrī, to be about to be advised*

PARTICIPLES

*Pres. monēns, advising**Perf. ———**monitus, having been advised, advised**Fut. monitūrus, about to advise*

GERUND

*Acc. monendum, advising**Gen. monendi, of advising**Dat. monendō, for advising**Abl. monendō, by advising*

GERUNDIVE

monendus, to be advised

SUPINE

*Acc. monitum, to advise**Abl. monitū, to advise*

477.

THIRD CONJUGATION: e-verbs

Regō, rule

Principal parts: regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		Present	PASSIVE VOICE		
<i>I rule, am ruling, do rule</i>		<i>I am ruled, am being ruled</i>			
regō	regimus	regor	regimur		
regis	regitis	regeris (-re)	regiminī		
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur		
		<i>Future</i>			
<i>I shall rule</i>		<i>I shall be ruled</i>			
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur		
regēs	regētis	regēris (-re)	regēminī		
reget	regent	regētur	regentur		
		<i>Imperfect</i>			
<i>I ruled, was ruling, did rule</i>		<i>I was ruled, was being ruled</i>			
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur		
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris (-re)	regēbāminī		
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur		
		<i>Perfect</i>			
<i>I have ruled, ruled, did rule</i>		<i>I have been ruled, was ruled</i>			
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$		
rēxistī	rēxistis			rēctī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
rēxit	rēxērunt (-ōre)				
		<i>Future Perfect</i>			
<i>I shall have ruled</i>		<i>I shall have been ruled</i>			
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$		
rēxeris	rēxeritis			rēctī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
rēxerit	rēxerint				
		<i>Pluperfect</i>			
<i>I had ruled</i>		<i>I had been ruled</i>			
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{eras} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$		
rēxerās	rēxerātis			rēctī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{eratis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
rēxerat	rēxerant				

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris (-re)	regāmini
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

Imperfect

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris (-re)	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

Perfect

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus {	sim	rēctī {	sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis		sis		sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit		sint

Pluperfect

rēxissem	rēxissemus	rēctus {	essem	rēctī {	essemus
rēxisseis	rēxisseitis		essēs		essētis
rēxisset	rēxisset		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

rege, rule thou	regere, be thou ruled
-----------------	-----------------------

PLURAL

regite, rule ye	regimini, be ye ruled
-----------------	-----------------------

Future

SINGULAR

regitō, thou shalt rule	regitor, thou shalt be ruled
regitō, he shall rule	regitor, he shall be ruled

PLURAL

regitōte, ye shall rule	_____
reguntō, they shall rule	reguntor, they shall be ruled

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>regere, to rule</i>	<i>regī, to be ruled</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>rēxisse, to have ruled</i>	<i>rēctus esse, to have been ruled</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule</i>	<i>rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled</i>

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>regēns, ruling</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<i>rēctus, having been ruled, ruled</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>rectūrus, about to rule</i>	

GERUND

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>regendum, ruling</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>regendī, of ruling</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>regendō, for ruling</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>regendō, by ruling</i>

GERUNDIVE

regendus, to be ruled

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēctum, to rule</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēctū, to rule</i>

478. THIRD CONJUGATION: verbs in -iō

Capiō: take

Principal parts: capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		<i>Present</i>	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>I take, am taking, do take</i>		<i>I am taken, am being taken</i>	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capimini
capit	capitunt	capitur	capiuntur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
<i>I shall take</i>		<i>I shall be taken</i>	
capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
capies	capietis	capieris (-re)	capiemini
capiet	capient	capientur	capientur

*Imperfect**I took, was taking, did take**I was taken, was being taken*

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

*Perfect**I have taken, took, did take**I have been taken, was taken*

cēpī	cēpimus	captus {	sum	captī {	sumus
cēpistī	cēpistis		es		estis
cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)		est		sunt

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus	captus {	erō	captī {	erimus
cēperis	cēperitis		eris		eritis
cēperit	cēperint		erit		erunt

*Pluperfect**I had taken**I had been taken*

cēperam	cēperāmus	captus {	eram	captī {	erāmus
cēperās	cēperātis		erās		erātis
cēperat	cēperant		erat		erant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

capiam	capiamus	capiar	capiamur
capias	capiatīs	capiaris (-re)	capiaminī
capiat	capiant	capiaur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris (-re)	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

cēperim	cēperimus	captus {	sim	captī {	sīmus
cēperis	cēperitis		sīs		sītis
cēperit	cēperint		sit		sint

Pluperfect

cēpīssē	cēpīssēmūs	captus	{	essem	capti	{	essēmūs
cēpīssēs	cēpīssētīs			essēs			essētīs
cēpīssēt	cēpīssēt			esset			essēt

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

cape, take thou

capere, be thou taken

PLURAL

capite, take ye

capimini, be ye taken

Future

SINGULAR

capitō, thou shalt take

capitor, thou shalt be taken

capitō, he shall take

capitor, he shall be taken

PLURAL

capitōte, ye shall take

—

capiuntō, they shall take

capiuntor, they shall be taken

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere, to take

capī, to be taken

Perf. cēpisse, to have taken

captus esse, to have been taken

Fut. captūrus esse, to be about to take

captum irī, to be about to be taken

PARTICIPLES

Pres. capiēns, taking

—

Perf. —

captus, having been taken, taken

Fut. captūrus, about to take

—

GERUND

Acc. capiendum, taking*Gen.* capiendī, of taking*Dat.* capiendō, for taking*Abl.* capiendō, by taking

GERUNDIVE

capiendus, to be taken

SUPINE

Acc. captum, to take

Abl. captū, to take

479. FOURTH CONJUGATION: ī-verbs

Audiō, hear

Principal parts: audiō, -īre, -īvi, -itus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		Present	PASSIVE VOICE
<i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i>		<i>I am heard, am being heard</i>	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris (-re)	audīmini
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur
<i>Future</i>			
<i>I shall hear</i>		<i>I shall be heard</i>	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris (-re)	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
<i>I heard, was hearing, did hear</i>		<i>I was heard, was being heard</i>	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris (-re)	audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur
<i>Perfect</i>			
<i>I have heard, heard, did hear</i>		<i>I have been heard, was heard</i>	
audīvī	audivimus	audītus { sum es est	audītī { sumus estis sunt
audīvistī	audivistis		
audīvit	audivērunt (-ēre)		
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
<i>I shall have heard</i>		<i>I shall have been heard</i>	
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus { erō eris erit	audītī { erimus eritis erunt
audīveris	audīveritis		
audīverit	audīverint		

*Pluperfect**I had heard*

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

I had been heard

auditus	eram	audītī	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (-re)	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris (-re)	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus	sim	audītī	sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis		sīs		sītis
audīverit	audīverint		sit		sint

Pluperfect

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus	essem	audītī	essēmus
audīvisēs	audīvissetis		essēs		essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

audī, hear thou	audīre, be thou heard
------------------------	------------------------------

PLURAL

audīte, hear ye	audīminī, be ye heard
------------------------	------------------------------

Future

SINGULAR

audītō, thou shalt hear	audītōr, thou shalt be heard
audītō, he shall hear	audītōr, he shall be heard

PLURAL.

audītōte, *ye shall hear* —

• audiuntō, *they shall hear* audiuntor, *they shall be heard*

INFINITIVE

Pres. audire, to hear *audiri, to be heard*

Perf. audīvisse, to have heard audītus esse, to have been heard

Fut. auditūrus esse, *to be about* auditum iri, *to be about to be heard*
to hear

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiēns, hearing —

Perf. — *audītus*, *having been heard, heard*

Fut. audītūrus, *about to hear* —

GERUND

Acc. audiendum, hearing

Gen. audiendī, of hearing

Dat. audiendō, for hearing

Abl. audiendō, *by hearing*

GERUNDIVE

audiendus, *to be heard*

SUPINE

Acc. audītum, *to hear*

Abl. audītū, *to hear*

IRREGULAR VERBS

480. Sum, I am Possum, I am able, I can Prōsum, I am helpful to.

Principal parts { sum, esse, fui, futūrus
possum,¹ posse, potui, —
prōsum,² prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus

¹ **Possum** is formed by uniting **potis**, *able*, and **sum**. From **potis** drop the ending **-is** and add **sum**. This gives **potsum**, then by assimilation **t** before **s** changes to **ss**, making **possum**. Before a vowel the form **pot** does not change. In the perfect system the **f** is dropped, leaving **potui** instead of **potful**. The infinitive shortens to **posse** for **potesse**.

² **Prōsum** is **prō** and **sum** combined without change except that **đ** is inserted when two vowels come together, as **prō** + **esse** becomes **prōdesse**.

INDICATIVE

Present

sum	possum	prōsum
es	potes	prōdes
est	potest	prōdest
sumus	possumus	prōsumus
estis	potestis	prōdestis
sunt	possunt	prōsunt

Future

erō	poterō	prōderō
eris	poteris	prōderis
erit	poterit	prōderit
erimus	poterimus	prōderimus
eritis	poteritis	prōderitis
erunt	poterunt	prōderunt

Imperfect

eram	poteram	prōderam
erās	poterās	prōderās
erat	poterat	prōderat
erāmus	poterāmus	prōderāmus
erātis	poterātis	prōderātis
erant	poterant	prōderant

Perfect

fuī	potuī	prōfuī
fuistī	potuistī	prōfuistī
fuit	potuit	prōfuit
fuius	potuimus	prōfuimus
fuistis	potuistis	prōfuistis
fuērunt (-ēre)	potuērunt (-ēre)	prōfuērunt (-ēre)

Future Perfect

fuerō	potuerō	prōfuerō
fueris	potueris	prōfueris
fuerit	potuerit	prōfuerit
fuerimus	potuerimus	prōfuerimus
fueritis	potueritis	prōfueritis
fuerint	potuerint	prōfuerint

Pluperfect

fueraam	potueraam	pröfueraam
fuerās	potuerās	pröfueraās
fuerat	potuerat	pröfueraat
fuerāmus	potuerāmus	pröfueraāmus
fuerātis	potuerātis	pröfueraātis
fuerant	potuerant	pröfueraant

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

sim	possim	prösim
sīs	possīs	prösīs
sit	possit	prösit
sīmus	possīmus	prösīmus
sītis	possītis	prösītis
sint	possint	prösint

Imperfect

essem	possem	prödessem
essēs	possēs	prödessēs
esset	posset	prödesset
essēmus	possēmus	prödessēmus
essētis	possētis	prödessētis
essent	possent	prödessent

Perfect

fuirim	potuerim	pröfuirim
fueris	potueris	pröfuieris
fuerit	potuerit	pröfuierit
fuerimus	potuerimus	pröfuierimus
fueritis	potueritis	pröfuieritis
fuerint	potuerint	pröfuierint

Pluperfect

fuissem	potuisssem	pröfuissem
fuiissēs	potuissēs	pröfuiissēs
fuisset	potuisset	pröfuisset
fuiissēmus	potuissēmus	pröfuiissēmus
fuiissētis	potuissētis	pröfuiissētis
fuiissent	potuissent	pröfuiissent

INTRODUCTORY LATIN

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

es	—	prōdes
----	---	--------

PLURAL

este	—	prōdeste
------	---	----------

Future

SINGULAR

estō	—	prōdestō
------	---	----------

estō	—	prōdestō
------	---	----------

PLURAL

estōte		prōdestōte
--------	--	------------

suntō		prōsuntō
-------	--	----------

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	esse	posse	prōdesse
<i>Perf.</i>	fuisse	potuisse	prōfuisse
<i>Fut.</i>	futūrus esse ¹		prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Fut.</i>	futūrus	prōfutūrus
-------------	---------	------------

481. Volō, nōlō, mālō

Principal parts	{	volō, velle, voluī, —	<i>I am willing, I wish</i>
		nōlō, ² nōlle, nōluī, —	<i>I am unwilling</i>
		mālō, ³ mālle, mālui, —	<i>I wish rather, I prefer</i>

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, -ēs, etc.	nōlam, -ēs, etc.	mālam, -ēs, etc.
<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam

¹ The form **fore** is often used in place of **futūrum esse**.

² **Nōlō** is for **nōnvolō**, from **nōn**, *not*, and **volō**.

³ **Mālō** is for **māvōlō**, from **magis**, *rather*, and **volō**.

<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>F. P.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
<i>Impf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī
	nōlīte
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlitō, etc.

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns
--------------	--------	--------

482. **Eō, go : adeō, go to, approach, visit**

Principal parts { **eō, ire, iī (ivī), itūrus**
 { **adeō, -ire, -iī, -itus**

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE VOICE			PASSIVE VOICE	
<i>Pres.</i>	eō	īmus		adeor	adīmur
	is	ītis		adīris (-re)	adīmīni
	it	eunt		adītur	adeuntur

<i>Fut.</i>	ībō	adībor
<i>Impf.</i>	ībam	adībar
<i>Perf.</i>	īī	aditus sum
<i>F. P.</i>	ierō	aditus erō
<i>Plup.</i>	ieram	aditus eram

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	eam	adear
<i>Impf.</i>	īrem	adīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	ierim	aditus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	īsem	aditus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ī	adīre
<i>Fut.</i>	ītō	adītor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ire	adīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	īsse	aditus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	ītūrus esse	aditum īrī

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	īēns, euntis (460)	
<i>Perf.</i>		aditus
<i>Fut.</i>	ītūrus	

GERUND

eundī

GERUNDIVE

adeundus

SUPINE

itum

a. In the perfect *īvī* is generally contracted to *īī*, and the forms *īissem* and *īisse* to *īsem* and *īsse*.

b. The passive of *adeō* is given since the simple verb *eō* is intransitive and therefore has no passive, except a few impersonal forms (488, *b*).

c. Except in the present indicative, where most of the irregularities occur, the synopsis only is given. The pupil should be able to fill out all forms from the synopsis.

483.

Ferō, bear, bring, endurePrincipal parts : **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers ¹	fertis	ferris (-re)	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
<i>Fut.</i>	feram		ferar	
<i>Impf.</i>	ferēbam		ferēbar	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		lātus sum	
<i>P. P.</i>	tulerō		lātus erō	
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram		lātus eram	

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	feram	ferar
<i>Impf.</i>	ferren.	ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim	lātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fer ²	ferre
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō ³	fertor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	latūrus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	
<i>Perf.</i>		lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	latūrus	

GERUND

ferendī

GERUNDIVE

ferendus

SUPINE

lātum

¹ **Fers**, **fert**, etc., are for **feris**, **ferit**, with the vowel dropped.² 295, 5, note.³ 294, 6.

484. **FĪŌ** (passive of **faciō**), *be made, become, happen*

Principal parts : fĭō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	fĭō (fĭmus)	<i>Pres.</i>	fiam
	fīs (fĭtis)	<i>Impf.</i>	fierem
	fīt fĭunt	<i>Perf.</i>	factus sim
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam	<i>Plup.</i>	factus essem
<i>Impf.</i>	fĭēbam		
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum	IMPERATIVE	
<i>F. P.</i>	factus erō	<i>Present</i>	
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram	(fĭ)	
		(fĭte)	
INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES	
<i>Pres.</i>	fierī		
<i>Perf.</i>	factus esse		factus
<i>Fut.</i>	factum īrī		
	faciendus	GERUNDIVE	

a. The verb **faciō**, *make*, is regular in the active, and in the perfect tenses of the passive. But **fĭō**, *be made or become*, active in form but passive in meaning, is used in the present, future, and imperfect as the passive of **faciō**. The forms in brackets are rarely used, and no future imperative is usually given.

DEPONENT VERBS

485. Dependent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. They are regular in conjugation.

I conjugation :

hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum, exhort, urge

II conjugation :

Principal parts vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, fear, dread

III conjugation :

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow

IV conjugation :

potior, -īrī, potītus sum, get control of

486.

Synopsis

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
<i>Fut.</i> hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
<i>Impf.</i> hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
<i>F. P.</i> hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō
<i>Plup.</i> hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i> horter	verear	sequar	potiar
<i>Impf.</i> hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
<i>Plup.</i> hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
<i>Fut.</i> hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i> hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
<i>Fut.</i> hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potitūrus
<i>Perf.</i> hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus

GERUND

hortandī	verendī	sequendī	potiundī
----------	---------	----------	----------

GERUNDIVE

hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
-----------	----------	-----------	-----------

SUPINE

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum
----------	---------	---------	---------

a. Deponents have participles of both voices, as :

sequēns, <i>following</i>	secūtus, <i>having followed</i>
secūtūrus, <i>about to follow</i>	sequendus, <i>to be followed</i>

b. The future infinitive is active in form and meaning, as :

secūtūrus esse, *to be about to follow*

c. The gerund and supine are also active.

487. SEMI-DEPONENTS

A few verbs have the active forms in the present system and the passive forms in other tenses, thus:

audeō, **audē**re, **ausus sum**, *dare* **gaude**ō, **-ē**re, **gavisus sum**, *rejoice*
fidō, **fidere**, **fisus sum**, *trust* **sōle**ō, **-ē**re, **solitus sum**, *be wont to*

488. IMPERSONAL VERBS

a. Some verbs are used only in the third person singular and the infinitive impersonally. They are called impersonal verbs, because they have no personal subject. The word *it* is generally used in English, as: **accidit**, *it happens*.

b. Intransitive verbs are sometimes used in the passive impersonally, as: **pugnābātur**, *it was being fought*, or *there was fighting*, etc. So in the periphrastic conjugations, as: **mihi pugnandum est**, *it is for me to be fought*, or *I must fight*.

489.

Synopsis

<i>It is allowed</i>	<i>It happens</i>	<i>It is fought, there is fighting, etc.</i>	<i>I must fight</i>
licet	accidit	pugnātur	mihi pugnandum est
licēbit	accidet	pugnābitur	pugnandum erit
licēbat	accidēbat	pugnābātur	pugnandum erat
licuit	accidit	pugnātum est	pugnandum fuit
licuerit	acciderit	pugnātum erit	pugnandum fuerit
licuerat	acciderat	pugnātum erat	pugnandum fuerat
liceat	accidat	pugnētur	pugnandum sit
licēret	accideret	pugnārētur	pugnandum esset
licuerit	acciderit	pugnātum sit	pugnandum fuerit
licuisset	accidisset	pugnātum esset	pugnandum fuisset
licēre	accidere	pugnārī	pugnandum esse
licuisse	accidisse	pugnātum esse	pugnandum fuisse
licitūrum esse		pugnātum irī	

RULES OF SYNTAX

The numbers refer to paragraphs in the text.

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case, 29.
2. A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person, 31.
3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb, 85.
4. An appositive is in the same case as the word it limits, 83.
5. An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs, 54.
6. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, 236.
7. The vocative is used in addressing a person, 47.
8. A noun, or pronoun, used to limit another, not meaning the same person or thing, is in the genitive case, 38.
9. The genitive is often used after a word expressing a part of something, 188.
10. A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the genitive to denote quality, 136.
11. Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt*, and their opposites, govern the genitive, 390.
12. The indirect object is in the dative, 40.
13. Adjectives meaning *near*, also *fit, friendly, pleasing, like*, and their opposites, take the dative, 264.
14. The dative may be used with **est, sunt**, etc., to denote the possessor (the thing possessed being the subject), 93.

15. The dative is used with **sum** and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves, 342.

16. The dative with the gerundive denotes the person who has the thing to do, 314.

17. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and a very few with **circum** and **con**, govern the dative, 341.

18. Most verbs meaning to *favour, help, please, trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon*, and *spare*, take the dative, 360.

19. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative, 30.

20. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, and some verbs of *demanding*, take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing, 377.

21. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative, 221.

22. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative, 306.

23. The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition, 48.

24. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote manner, 119 with *a*.

25. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote accompaniment, 120 with *a*.

26. The ablative is used with **cum** after verbs of association and contention, 120, note.

27. The ablative is used to express cause, 141.

28. The personal agent with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**, 77.

29. After verbs denoting separation, privation, and want, the ablative is used, 379.

30. **Opus** and **ūsus**, meaning *need*, take the ablative, 380.

31. The ablative is used with the comparative without **quam**, 172.
32. The measure of difference is expressed by the ablative, 180.
33. The ablative of specification is used to tell in what respect a thing is true, 158.
34. A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the ablative to denote quality, 392.
35. The verbs **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor** take the ablative, 366.
36. A noun, or pronoun, with a participle or adjective agreeing with it, is often used independently in the ablative absolute, 334.
37. Time *when*, or *within which*, is expressed by the ablative, 219.
38. Place *where*, not including names of cities, is expressed by the ablative with **in** ; place *to which* by the accusative with **ad** or **in** ; place *from which* by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ō** (**ex**), 354 *a*.
39. With names of cities and **domus** and **rūs** —
 1. Place *where* is expressed by the locative, 354, 1.
 2. Place *to which* is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, 354, 2.
 3. Place *from which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, 354, 3.
40. The subjunctive with **ut**, negative **nē**, is used to express purpose, 273.
41. The subjunctive with **ut**, negative **ut nōn**, is used to express result, 281.
42. A relative clause denoting purpose takes the subjunctive, 336.
43. The verb in an indirect question is in the subjunctive mood, 287.

44. The verb in an indirect request is in the subjunctive mood, 399.

45. Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse take the subjunctive, 384.

46. The subjunctive is used in exhortations, corresponding to the English *let*, 397.

47. **Cum**, *causal* or *concessive*, takes the subjunctive, 279, 1.

48. **Cum**, *temporal*, takes the subjunctive when it denotes the *circumstances* or *occasion* for some other action, 279, 2.

49. **Dum**, meaning *while*, regularly takes the present indicative, 415, 1.

50. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *as long as*, take the indicative, 415, 2.

51. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, take

a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, 415, 3, *a.*

b. The subjunctive to denote intention or expectancy, 415, 3, *b.*

52. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, take —

a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, 416, *a.*

b. The subjunctive to denote intention, expectancy, or prevention, 416, *b.*

53. **Postquam**, *after*; **ubi**, **ut**, *when, as, as soon as*; **simul ac**, *as soon as*, take the indicative (usually *perfect*), 419.

54. Simple conditions, nothing implied, take the indicative, in both clauses, 425, I.

55. Future conditions, more vivid, take the future (or future perfect) indicative in the condition, and the future indicative in the conclusion, 425, II, *a.*

56. Future conditions, less vivid, take the present (or perfect) subjunctive in the condition, and the present subjunctive in the conclusion, 425, II, *b.*

57. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunc-

tive for present or continued action, and the pluperfect for past or completed action, 425, III.

58. Clauses expressing a wish in the indefinite future take the present subjunctive, 426.

59. Clauses expressing a wish unfulfilled in the present take the imperfect subjunctive, 426.

60. Clauses expressing a wish referring to the past take the pluperfect subjunctive, 426.

61. The infinitive is often used to complete the meaning of another verb, 304.

62. The infinitive with subject accusative is used after verbs, and other expressions, of *knowing, thinking, saying, and perceiving*, 306.

63. The supine in *-um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose, 321, 1.

64. The supine in *-ū* is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of specification, 321, 2.

For tenses of the subjunctive see 406.

For tenses of the infinitive see 409 and 411.

For tenses of the participle see 409 and 410.

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	<i>ablative.</i>	intr.	<i>intransitive.</i>
abs.	<i>absolute.</i>	irr.	<i>irregular.</i>
acc.	<i>accusative.</i>	loc.	<i>locative.</i>
act.	<i>active.</i>	m., mas.	<i>masculine.</i>
adj.	<i>adjective.</i>	n., neu.	<i>neuter.</i>
adv.	<i>adverb.</i>	neg.	<i>negative.</i>
cf. (cōnfer)	<i>compare.</i>	nom.	<i>nominative.</i>
comp.	<i>comparative.</i>	num.	<i>numeral.</i>
conj.	<i>conjunction.</i>	ord.	<i>ordinal.</i>
dat.	<i>dative.</i>	part.	<i>participle.</i>
def.	<i>defective.</i>	pass.	<i>passive.</i>
deg.	<i>degree.</i>	perf.	<i>perfect.</i>
dep.	<i>deponent.</i>	pers.	<i>personal.</i>
dem.	<i>demonstrative.</i>	pl., plur.	<i>plural.</i>
dis.	<i>distributive.</i>	pluperf.	<i>pluperfect.</i>
f., fem.	<i>feminine.</i>	pos.	<i>positive.</i>
fut.	<i>future.</i>	poss.	<i>possessive.</i>
gen.	<i>genitive.</i>	prep.	<i>preposition.</i>
imperf.	<i>imperfect.</i>	pres.	<i>present.</i>
impers.	<i>impersonal.</i>	pron.	<i>pronoun.</i>
imp.	<i>imperative.</i>	refl.	<i>reflexive.</i>
ind.	<i>indicative.</i>	rel.	<i>relative.</i>
indecl.	<i>indeclinable.</i>	sing.	<i>singular.</i>
indef.	<i>indefinite.</i>	subj.	<i>subjunctive.</i>
inf.	<i>infinitive.</i>	sup.	<i>superlative.</i>
interrog.	<i>interrogative.</i>	tr.	<i>transitive.</i>
interj.	<i>interjection.</i>	v.	<i>verb.</i>

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The numbers refer to paragraphs in the text.

A

- ā**, or **ab**, prep. with abl., *by, from*.
- ab-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hide*.
- ab-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away*. [from.]
- ab-eō**, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go away, go*
- ab-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [ab-
i-ciō], *throw away, cast away, throw*.
- ablātus**, see **auferō**.
- ab-rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *abrogate, take away*.
- abstineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [ab(s)-
teneō], *hold back from, abstain*.
- ab-sum**, -esse, -āfui, -āfuturus, *be away from, be absent*.
- āc**, see **atque**.
- accēnsus**, -a, -um, *lighted, excited, aroused*.
- ac-cidō**, -ere, -cidī, — [ad-cadō], *fall upon, fall out; accidit, happens, it happens*.
- ac-cipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad-
capiō], *take, accept, receive*.
- accūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *accuse*.
- ācer**, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, eager, active*.
- acerbus**, -a, -um, *bitter, harsh*.
- aciēs**, -ēī [ācer], f., *edge, line (of battle)*.
- ācriter** [ācer], adv., *sharply, fiercely*.
- Actiacus**, -a, -um, *of Actium*.
- ad**, prep. with acc., *to, toward; near; for, for the purpose of; as adv. with numbers, about, nearly*.
- ad-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *add*.
- ad-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, win over, influence, draw to, draw back* [to, bring.]
- ad-ferō**, -ferre, attulī, adlātus, *bring*
- adeo**, -īre, -iī, or -ii, *approach*.
- ad-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad-faciō], *make towards, cause, affect, afflict*.
- ad-flīgō**, -ere, -flīxī, -flictus, *strike against, damage, afflict*.
- ad-gredior**, -ī, -gressus sum [ad-
gradior], *go against, attack; enter upon, begin*.
- ad-hibeō**, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, *call upon, invoke*. [urge.]
- ad-hortor**, -āri, -tātus sum, *exhort*,
- ad-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [ad-iaciō], *throw upon, add to*.
- aditus**, -ūs [ad-eō], m., *approach, entrance*.
- ad-iungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, *join to, unite*.
- ad-iuvō**, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *give aid to, assist*.
- ad-loquor**, -ī, -locūtus sum, *speak to, address*.
- ad-ministrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *manage, attend to*.
- ad-moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *admonish, advise*.
- ad-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move to or near, apply*.
- ad-nectō**, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus, *tie to, fasten*.
- ad-olēscō**, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus, *grow up*. Cf. Eng. *adult*.

- ad-orior**, -irī, -ortus sum, *arise, rise against, attack.*
- ad-ōrnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish, adorn, equip, decorate.*
- ad-propinquō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approach.*
- adrogantia**, -ae [ad-rogō], f., *arrogance, assumption, haughtiness.*
- ad-rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask for, claim.*
- ad-sum**, -esse, -fui, futūrus, *be present, help.*
- adventus**, -ūs [ad-veniō], m., *coming, arrival.*
- adversus**, -a, -um, *opposite, facing.*
- adversus**, prep. with acc., *against.*
- advertō**, -ere, -verti, -versus, *observe, regard.*
- aedis**, -is, f., *temple*; plur., *house.*
- aeger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, weak.*
- aegrē**, adv., *feebly, with difficulty, scarcely.* [Trojan.
- Aenēas**, -ae, m., *Aeneas, a famous*
- aequō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *equal, level.*
- aequor**, -oris [aequus], n., *level surface, sea.*
- āēr**, -āēris, m., *air.*
- aes**, aeris, n., *copper, bronze, instrument of bronze.*
- aetas**, -ātis, f., *age, life.*
- aether**, -eris, m., *air, upper air, sky.*
- Aetnaeus**, -a, -um, *of Mt. Aetna.*
- aevum**, -ī, n., *age.*
- af-fixō**, -ere, -fixi, fixus, *fasten to.*
- ager**, agri, m., *field, land.*
- agger**, -eris, m., *mound, rampart.*
- agmen**, -inis [agō], n. (*the thing led*), *army, column, line (of an army)*; **novissimum agmen**, *rear line, rear.*
- a-gnosco**, -ere, agnōvī, agnitus, *recognize.*
- agō**, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *lead, drive, take; do, effect, treat, arrange, argue; run (a sewer).*
- agrestis**, -e [ager], *of the country, rustic.*
- agricola**, -ae [ager-colō], m., *tiller of the field, farmer.*
- agricultūra**, -ae, *cultivation of the field, agriculture.*
- ait**, from aiō, a defective verb, *he says, says he.*
- āla**, -ae, f., *wing.*
- Alba Longa**, -ae, f., *Alba Longa, a legendary city built by Ascanius.*
- Albānus**, -a, -um, *of Alba, a citizen of Alba.*
- albeō**, -ēre, *be white.*
- albus**, -a, -um, *white.*
- Alcidēs**, -ae, m., *son of Alceus, Hercules.*
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, *belonging to another, foreign; unfavorable.*
- aliquandō**, adv., *sometime.*
- aliquantum**, adv., *somewhat, considerable.*
- aliquantus**, -a, -um, *considerable, quite large.*
- aliquis**, -qua, -quid (402), indef. pron., *some one.*
- aliquot**, indecl. adj., *several.*
- aliter**, adv., *otherwise.*
- alius**, -a, -ud, *another.* (See 200.)
- al-loquor** [ad-loquor], -ī, locūtus, *address.*
- alō**, -ere, alui, altus, *foster, support, keep, tend.*
- altē** [altus], adv., *high, deep, deeply.*
- alter**, altera, alterum, *the other* (see 200); **alter . . . alter**, *one . . . the other, unus et alter, both.*
- altus**, -a, -um, *high, tall; deep.*
- alveus**, -ī, m., *tub, basket, tray.*
- ambāges**, -is, f., *obscurity, riddle.*
- ambigō**, -ere, doubt (pass. used impers., *there is a question*).
- ambiguus**, -a, -um, *doubtful.*
- ambulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk.*
- amēns**, amentis [ā-mēns], adj., *without reason, rash, frenzied, excited.*

America, -ae, f., *America*.

amicitia, -ae [amicus], f., *friendship*.

amicus, -a, -um [amō], *friendly, a friend*.

amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *love*.

amplificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *enlarge, increase*.

Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius*, king at Alba.

an, conj., *or*.

ancile, -is, n., *shield*. [tins.

Ancus Mārtius, -ī, m., *Ancus Mar-*

angulus, -ī, m., *corner*.

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.

animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versus [animus-advertō], *turn the mind to, notice; with in, take action against, punish*.

animal, -ālis, n., *animal*.

animus, -ī, m., *mind, feeling, will, resolution, spirit, anger*.

annulus, -ī, m., *ring*.

annus, -ī, m., *year*.

annuus, -a, -um, *annual, yearly*.

ante, adv., or prep. with acc., *before*.

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, *place before, put before, prefer*.

antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient*.

antrum, -ī, n., *cave*.

anus, -ūs, f., *old woman, witch*.

aperiō, -ire, aperui, apertus, *uncover, disclose, reveal, make known*.

apertē [apertus], adv., *openly*.

apertus, -a, -um, *open, plain, uncovered, unprotected*.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call, name*.

ap-plicō [ad-plico], -āre, -āvi and -ui, -ātus, *attach*.

Aprīlis, -e, of *April, April*.

aptē, adv., *skilfully*.

aptus, -a, -um, *fitted, suited*.

apud, prep. with acc., *with, among, in the presence of*.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*.

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle*.

Aquilēia, -ae, f., *Aquileia*, a town in Gaul.

Aquilo, -ōnis, m., *north wind*.

Aquitānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania*, a district of Gaul.

āra, -ae, f., *altar*.

Arar, Araris, acc. Ararim, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.

arātrum, -ī [arō], n., *plough*.

arbitrium, -ī, n., *mastery*.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think, judge*.

arceō, -ēre, -ui, -tus, *keep off*.

arcessō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, *send for*.

Arctos, -ī, f., *Great Bear, north*.

Ardea, -ae, f., *Ardea*, a city.

ārdescō, -ere, ārsi, —, *take fire, blaze, burn*.

argentum, -ī, n., *ilver*.

Ariōvistus, -ī, m., *Ariovistus*, a German chief.

arma, -ōrum plur., n., *arms, defences*.

armilla, -ae, f., *bracelet*.

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *arm*.

arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *plow*.

ar-ripiō, -ere, -ripiui, -reptus [ad-rapiō], *seize*.

ars, artis, f., *art, skill*.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*.

ascendō, -ere, -di, -sus, *ascend, climb*.

ascēnsus, -ūs [ascendō], m., *ascent*.

asellus, -ī, m., *donkey*.

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia*.

asper, -era, -erum, *rough*.

a-spiciō [ad-spicio], -ere, -spexi, -spectus, *see, look*.

assiduus, -a, -um, *continual, busy*.

asylum, -ī, n., *a place of refuge, asylum*.

at, conj., *but*.

at-que (generally **ac** before a consonant), *and*.

atrōx, atrōcis, adj., *fierce, cruel*.

attingō, -ere, attingi, attactus [ad-tangō], *touch, reach to, border on*.

attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign, give over to*.

auctōritās, -ātis, f., *influence, prestige, authority*.

audācia, -ae [audāx], f., *boldness, courage, daring*.

audācter [audāx], adv., *boldly*.

audāx, -ācis [audecō], adj., *daring, bold, brave*.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum (487), *dare*.

audiō, -īre, -īvi, -itus, *hear*.

au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab-ferō], *carry away, take off*.

au-fugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus [ab-fugiō], *flee away, escape*.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase*.

augurium, -ī, n., *augury, omen, divination, interpretation of omens*.

aura, -ae, f., *air, breeze*.

aureus, -a, -um [aurum], *of gold, golden*.

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

Ausonia, -ae, f., *Italy*.

auspex, -icis, m. and f., *witness, director*. [. . . or.

aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either*

autem, conj., postpositive (435, n. 6), *but, on the other hand*.

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help*; plur., *auxiliaries*.

Aventinus, -ī, m., *the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome*.

Aventinus, -a, -um, *Aventine*.

āversus, -a, -um, *turned away, backward*.

ā-vertō, -ere, āvertī, āversus, *turn, turn away*.

avidē, adv., *greedily*.

avidus, -a, -um, *greedy*.

avis, -is, f., *bird*.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

axis, -is, m., *pole, sky*.

B

bacchor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *revel, rave*.

baculum, -ī, n., *a staff*.

barba, -ae, f., *beard*.

Belgae, -ārum, plur., m., *the Belgae or the Belgians, a tribe of Gaul*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], *warlike, fond of war*.

bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], *pertaining to war, military*.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*.

bene [bonus], adv., *well*.

benīgnē, adv., *kindly, courteously*.

benīgnitās, -ātis, f., *kindness*.

Bessi, -ōrum, n., *a Thracian tribe*.

bēstia, -ae, f., *a beast*.

bibō, -ere, bibi, —, *drink*.

bidens, -ntis [bi-dens], m., *pitchfork*.

bīmus, -a, -um, *lasting two years*.

bipartītō, adv., *in two divisions*.

bis, adv., *twice*. [sive.

blandus, -a, -um, *winning, persuasive*.
bona, n., plur. of **bonus**, *good things; goods, property*.

Boreas, -ae, m., *Boreas, the north wind*.

bōs, bovis (gen. plur. **bovum** or **boum**, dat. **bōbus** or **būbus**), m. or f., *ox, cow*.

braccae, -ārum, f., *breeches*.

bracchium, -ī, n., *arm*.

brevis, -e, *brief, short, small*.

C

cacūmen, -inis, n., *summit, head*.

Cācus, -ī, m., *Cacus (a giant)*.

cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsūrus, *fall*.

caedēs, -is [caedō], f., *slaughter*.

caedō, -ere, cecidi, caesus, *cut; kill*.

caelestis, -e, *celestial, heavenly, of heaven*; **caelestēs**, plur., *the gods*.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens*.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Cæsar*; the title of the emperor.

calamitās, -ātis, f., *disaster defeat, calamity.*

calcar, -āris, n., *spur.*

calefaciō (or **calfaciō**), -ere, -fēcī, -factus (calidus, faciō), *heat.*

callidus, -a, -um, *shrewd, experienced.*

calx, calcis, f., *heel, hoof.*

campus, -ī, m., *plain, field.*

candidus, -a, -um, *white, glistening.*

canities, ēī [cānus], f., *whiteness, grey hair, greyness.*

canō, -ere, cecinī, —, *sing, chant, predict, foretell.*

caper, -prī, m., *goat.*

capillus, -ī, m., *hair.* [tain.

capiō, -ere, cōpī, captus, *take, con-*

Capitolium, -ī, n., *the Capitol (at Rome).*

capra, -ae, f., *goat, she-goat.*

captīvus, -ī, m., *captive.*

caput, capitis, n., *head, capital (city).*

carmen, -inis, n., *song, incantation.*

carpentum, -ī, n., *chariot.*

carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus, *pluck, tear.*

carrus, -ī, m., *wagon.*

Carseolānus, -ā, -um, *of Carseolum.*

cārus, -a, -um, *dear.*

casa, -ae, f., *hut.*

castellum, -ī, n., *fortress.*

Casticus, -ī, m., *Casticus, a leader of the Sequani in Gaul.*

castra, -ōrum, n., plur., *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., *fall, chance, accident, misfortune.*

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason ; causā* (after a genitive), *for the sake of.*

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *guard against, be on one's guard, avoid.*

cavus, -a, -um, *hollow.*

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *withdraw, yield, surrender.*

Celer, -eris, m., *Celer, a Roman knight.*

celer, celeris, celere, *swift, quick.*

celeritās, -ātis [celer], f., *swiftness*

celeriter [celer], adv., *swiftly.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *conceal.*

Celtae, -ārum, m., *the Celts, inhabiting a part of Gaul.*

cēnsēō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *enumerate, reckon, think, propose.*

cēnsus, -ūs [cēnsēō], m., *census, list.*

centum, indecl. num. adj., *hundred.*

centuria, -ae, f., *a century, a division of a hundred people.*

cēra, -ae, f., *wax.*

Cereālis, -e, of *Ceres.*

Ceres, -eris, f., *Ceres, goddess of corn ; corn.*

certāmen, -inis [certō], n., *contest, dispute.*

certē [certus], adv., *certainly.*

certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *contend, strive.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero, the famous orator at Rome.*

cieō, -ēre, cīvī, citus, *incite, urge on.*

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround.*

circa, prep. and adv., *around, about.*

circiter, adv., *about, nearly.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around.*

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *place around, surround.*

circum-sistō, -ere, -stetī, —, *stand around, surround.*

circum-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *look round on, survey.*

circus, -ī, m., *circle, race-course, ring ; Circus Māximus, the Circus Maximus at Rome, with room for a hundred thousand spectators.*

citerior, -ius, adj., comp., *hither, nearer* (186, 1).

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side.*

cīvis, -is, m. or f., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis [cīvis], f., *citizenship.*

clādēs, -is, f., *slaughter.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *shout*.
clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, cry, clamour*.
clangor, -ōris, m., *noise, uproar*.
clārus, -a, -um, *clear, famous, loud* (noise).
classis, -is, f., *class* (of people), *fleet* (of ships).
claudicō, -are, *limp*.
claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *close, shut*.
clāva, -ae, f., *club*.
cliēns, -tis, m., *client, vassal*.
cloāca, -ae, f., *sewer, drain*.
co-eō [cum+eo], -īre, -iī, -iturus, *assemble*.
coepī, -isse, coeptus (not found in the present system, 99, b.), *began*.
coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *restrain*.
cōgitātiō, -ōnis, f., *thought, meditation*.
cōgnātus, -ā, -um, *kindred, related*.
cōgnōmen, -inis [cōgnōscō], n., *sur-name, name*.
cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *learn*; **cōgnōvī**, *I have learned or I know*.
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coactus [cum+agō], *compel*.
cohors, cohortis, f., *farm-yard*; *cohort*, a division of the legion.
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, *exhort, urge*.
col-labefactō, -āre, *shake*.
Collatinus, -ī, m., *Collatinus*.
col-ligō -ere, -lēgī, -lectus, *collect*.
collis, -is, m., *hill*.
colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *cultivate, cherish, worship*.
colōna, -ae, f., *country woman*.
colōnia, -ae, f. [colōnus], f., *colony*.
rolōnus, -ī [colō], m., *tiller* (of the soil), *settler, colonist*.
color, -ōris, m., *colour*.
comes, -itis [cum-eō, itūrus], m. and f., *companion*.
comitās, -ātis, f., *courtesy, friendliness*.

comitium, -ī, n., *the comitium*, a place of assembly; plur., *assembly, the comitia*. -
com-memorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *mention*.
com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *commit, intrust*; *commence* (battle).
commoditās, -ātis, f., *convenience*.
com-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, move greatly, disturb, alarm*.
commūniter, adv., *in common*.
commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *a change*.
com-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *get together, compare*.
com-periō, -īre, comperi, comperitus, *find out, discover, learn*.
com-probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *ap-prove, commend*.
con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *yield, give up to, grant*.
con-cidō, -ere, cīdī, -cīsus [caedō], *cut down, kill*.
conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *win, conciliate*.
concilium, -ī, n., *council*.
concitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *arouse, excite*.
con-clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *cry out, shout, exclaim*.
concordia, -ae, f., *harmony, concord*.
con-crepō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *clash*.
con-currō, -ere, -currī (or -cucurrī), -cursus, *rush together, charge*.
concursum, -ūs [con-currō], m., *rush, charge, meeting*.
conditor, -ōris [condō], m., *founder*.
condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, *found, hide*.
con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring together, lead, conduct*.
cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring together, compare, bring, transfer*.
cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f., *confession*.

- cōn-yiciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [con-faciō], *complete, finish, wear out, exhaust.*
- cōn-firmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [firmus], *strengthen, confirm, assure.*
- con-flagrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *burn, be consumed.*
- con-fugiō**, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, *fly, have recourse to.*
- con-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw, hurl.*
- con-iungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, *join together, unite.*
- coniūnx**, -iugis [coniungō], m. and f. (a married person), *husband, wife.*
- coniūrātiō**, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
- con-locō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *place, station.*
- conloquium**, -ī [conloquor], n., *conference, conversation.*
- con-loquor**, -ī, -locūtus sum, *talk together, confer.*
- conplōrātiō**, -ōnis, f., *wailing.*
- cōn-scribō**, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, *write (names) together, enroll, enlist.*
- cōn-secrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sacer], *consecrate.*
- cōn-sequor**, -ī, -cūtus sum, *follow.*
- cōnsēnsus**, -ūs, m., *agreement, harmony, consent.*
- consertus**, -a, -um, *joined, united (in battle).* [preserve.]
- cōn-servō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *save,*
- cōn-sidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, *sit down, settle, encamp.*
- cōnsilium**, -ī, n., *plan, council, advice, discretion.*
- con-sistō**, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *stand.*
- cōn-sōlor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *console, cheer.*
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, m., *sight, view.*
- cōnspicōr**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *catch sight of, see.*
- cōnstat**, -āre, impers., *it is evident, it is agreed.*
- cōn-stituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō], *erect, station, arrange, determine.*
- con-stō**, -āre, -stitī, *stand still.*
- cōnsuēscō**, -ere, -suēvi, -suētus, *become accustomed; cōnsuēvi, I have become accustomed, or am accustomed.*
- cōnsul**, -is, m., *consul.*
- cōnsulō**, -ere, -suluī, -sultus, *consult.*
- cōnsultus**, -a, -um, *wise, learned, experienced.*
- cōn-sūmō**, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *consume.*
- con-temnō**, -ere, -tempśī, -temptus, *despise, disdain.*
- contendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *contend, strive, hasten, hurry on.*
- contentiō**, -ōnis [contendō], f., *effort, exertion.*
- contentus**, -a, -um, *contented.*
- con-ticescō**, -ere, -ticuī [taceō], *become silent.*
- con-tineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [tencō], *hold, restrain, hem in, bound.*
- continenter**, adv., *continually.*
- contiō**, -ōnis, f., *assembly, meeting, speech.*
- con-trahō**, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *bring together, heap upon, bring upon.*
- cōnūbium**, -ī, n., *marriage, wedlock.*
- con-valescō**, -ere, -valuī, *recover.*
- con-vallis**, -is, f., *valley, dell.*
- con-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, meet.*
- convenit**, impers. with dat., *it is agreed.*
- conventus**, -ūs [con-veniō], m., *meeting, assembly, agreement.*
- con-vertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn.*
- con-vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call together, summon.*

co-orior, -īri, -ortus sum, *arise, spring up, break out.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *supply, abundance*; plur., *forces, troops.*

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of army).

corpus, -oris, n., *body.*

cor-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *corrupt, bribe.*

cor-ruō, -ere, -uī, ---, *fall.*

cortex, -icis, m. and f., *bark* (of tree).

cotidiē, adv., *daily.*

crābro, -ōnis, m., *hornet.*

Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus*, one of Caesar's officers in Gaul.

crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, repeated.*

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, *trust to, trust, believe.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *create, elect.*

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *increase, grow larger.*

crimen, -inis, n., *accusation.*

crīnis, -is, m., *hair.*

crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame.*

cultus, -a, -um [colō], *cultivated.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with.*

cum, conj., *when; since, as; although.*

cūnae, -ārum, f., *cradle, nest.*

cunctus, -a, -um, *all.*

cupidē [cupidi], adv., *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -ātis [cupidus], f., *eagerness, desire.*

cupidō, -inis, f., *eagerness.*

cupidus, -a, -um [cupiō], *eager, desirous.* [*wish, long for.*]

cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupitus, *desire,*

cūr, adv., *why.*

cūra, -ae, f., *care.*

Curēs, -ium, plur., f., *Cures*, the chief town of the Sabines.

cūria, -ae, f., *senate-house; cūriae*, plur., *curiae, companies, divisions* (of the early Romans).

Cūriatīi, -ōrum, m., *the Curiatii*, the three brothers who fought with the three Horatii.

cursus, -ūs [currō], m., *running, course, speed.*

curūlis, -e, *official; sella curūlis*, the official or curule chair.

curvus, -a, -um, *curved.*

custōdia, -ae [custōs], f., *guard, watch, protection, care.*

custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [custōs], *watch, guard, protect.*

custōs, -ōdis, m., *watch, guard, keeper, protector.*

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *condemn.*

damnōsus, -a, -um, *destructive.*

dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning, for, with reference to; from, down from.*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought, is due.*

decem, num. adj., *ten.*

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *decide, decree, determine.*

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth.*

decus, -oris, n., *beauty, honor.*

dē-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, *strike off.*

dēditiō, -ōnis [dēdō], f., *surrender.*

dē-dō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, *give over; with sē, surrender.*

dēfatigātus, -a, -um, *wearied.*

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *defend.*

dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *fail, revolt.*

dē-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *insert.*

dē-gener, -eris, adj., *unworthy, degenerate.*

dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw down, cast down; dēiectus*, *disappointed.*

deinde, adv., *then, next, thereafter.*

- dē-lābor**, -ī, -lāpsus sum, *glide down, descend*.
- dēlēō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy*.
- dē-liberō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deliberate, consider*.
- dē-ligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē-legō], *select, choose*.
- dē-liquescō**, -ere, -licuī, —, *melt*.
- dēmīssus**, -a, -um, *sent down, let down, swooping down*.
- dēmum**, adv., *at last*.
- dēnique**, adv., *at last*.
- dē-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put away*.
- dēprecātor**, -ōris, m., *mediator*.
- dē-scendō**, -ere, -dī, -sus, *descend, plunge*.
- dē-serō**, -ere, -uī, -sertus, *desert*.
- dē-signō**, -āre, āvī, -ātus, *designate, indicate, trace*.
- dē-spiciō**, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *look down upon, despise*.
- dē-sum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be wanting, fail*.
- dē-terreō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten from; deter, hinder*.
- deus**, -ī, m., *a god*.
- dē-vorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gulp down*.
- dexter**, -tra, -trum, *right*.
- dextra**, -ae, f., *right hand*.
- Diāna**, -ae, f., *Diana, a goddess*.
- dīcō**, -ere, dixī, dictus, *say*.
- dī-dūcō**, -ere, -duxī, -ductus, *lead apart, part, divide*.
- diēs**, -ēī, m. and f. (217), *day*.
- difficultās**, -ātis, f., *difficulty*.
- digitus**, -ī, m., *finger*.
- dignus**, -a, -um, *worthy*.
- diligenter** [diligēns], adv., *carefully, attentively*.
- diligentia**, -ae [diligēns], f., *carefulness, earnestness, diligence*.
- diligō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *esteem*.
- dīmicātiō**, -ōnis [dīmicō], f., *fight, struggle, contest*.
- dīmicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend*.
- dīrus**, -a, -um, *dreadful*.
- dis-cēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessurus, *withdraw*.
- discō**, -ere, didici, discitūrus, *learn*.
- discordia**, -ae, f., *discord, dissension*.
- discordō**, -āre, —, —, *disagree, quarrel*.
- discrībō**, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, *designate, form*.
- dis-pār**, -is, *unequal, ill-matched*.
- dissidium**, -ī, n., *dissension*.
- dis-similis**, -e, *dissimilar, unlike*.
- dis-simulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *keep secret*.
- di-stō**, -āre, —, —, *be distant*.
- dis-tribuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *distribute, assign, turn over to*.
- diū**, adv., *for a long time, long*.
- dīversus**, -a, -um, *turned away, distant*.
- dives**, -itis, adj., *rich*.
- Dīviciācus**, -ī, m., *Diviciacus, leader among the Haedui in Gaul*.
- Dīvicō**, -ōnis, m., *Divico, a leader among the Helvetii in Gaul*.
- dīvidō**, -ere, -visī, -vīsus, *divide*.
- dīvīnus**, -a, -um, *divine*.
- dīvitiae**, -ārum, f., plur., *riches*.
- dō**, dare, dedi, datus, *give*.
- doceō**, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show*.
- doleō**, -ēre, -uī, dolitūrus, *grieve*.
- dolor**, -ōris [doleō], m., *grief*.
- dolus**, -ī, m., *deceit, trick*.
- domina**, -ae, f., *mistress*.
- dominus**, -ī, m., *master, owner*.
- domus**, -ūs or -ī, f. (210, b, c), *house*.
- dōnec**, conj., *until*.
- dōnum**, -ī, n., *gift*.
- dormiō**, -īre, -ivi, -itus, *sleep*.
- dubitātiō**, -ōnis [dubitō], f., *doubt, hesitation*.
- dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *doubt, hesitate*.

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful, uncertain*.
ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two hundred*.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw*.
dulcis, -e, *sweet*.

Dulichium, -ī, n., *Dulichium*, an island near Ithaca.

Dulichius, -a, -um, *of Dulichium*.

dum, conj., *as long as, while, until*.

Dumnorix, -īgis, m., *Dumnorix*, a Haëduan nobleman, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two*.

duodecim, num. adj., *twelve*.

duodēquadrāgensimus, -a, -um, num. ord. adj., *thirty-eighth*.

duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *double*.

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, strong*.

dux, ducis, m. or f., *leader*.

ē, see **ex**.

ēducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *bring up, educate*.

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, draw out, take away*.

ef-ferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex-ferō], *bring out, carry out, put forth*.

ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex-faciō], *bring about, cause, make (something) be*.

ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex-fugiō], *flee from, escape*.

ef-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus [ex-fundō], *pour out; sē effundere, to overflow*.

egeō, -ēre, -uī, *be in want of*.

ēgregius, -a, -um, *extraordinary, excellent*.

ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlectus, *choose*.

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send out, throw; vōcem ēmittō, utter a sound*.

enim, conj., postpositive (435, n. 6), *for*.

ē-niteō, -ēre, -uī, —, *shine forth, be conspicuous*.

e-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, report*.

eō, ire, ivī or iī, itūrus, *go*.

eō, adv., *to that place, there*.

epistula, -ae, f., *letter*.

eques, -itis [equus], m., *horseman, knight; plur., cavalry*.

equitātus, -ūs [eques], m. (*body of horsemen*), *cavalry*.

equus, -ī, m., *horse*.

ergō, adv., *therefore, then*.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *wander*.

ērudīō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *teach, instruct, educate*.

et, conj., *and; (rarely) also; et . . . et, both . . . and*.

etiam, adv., *even*.

Etrūria, -ae, f., *Etruria*, a country of Italy.

Eurus, -ī, m., *Eurus*, the east wind.

ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *come out, turn out; evade*.

ē-vellō, -ēre, -vellī, -volsus, *uproot, tear out*.

ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come out, turn out, happen*.

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call out, summon*.

ex, or **ē** [ex before a vowel], prep. with abl., *out of, from, of; in accordance with, following from; after*.

exāmen, -inis, n., *swarm (of bees)*.

ex-cidō, -ere, -cidi, -cessūrus, *fall out, pass away, perish*.

ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [capiō], *receive; welcome*.

excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *excite, arouse*.

excursiō, -ōnis [ex-currō], f., *raid*.

ex-cutiō, -ere, excussī, excussus [ex-quatiō], *shake out, arouse*.

exemplum, -ī, n., *example, pattern*.

ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itus, *go out*.
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *exercise*.
exercitus, -ūs [exerceō], m. (*a trained body of men*), *army*.
ex-ēsus, -a, -um [ex-edō], *eaten out, hollow*.
ex-hauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus, *draw out, drain, exhaust*.
exiguus, -a, -um, *small, tiny*.
ex-istimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-acstimō], *estimate, reckon, consider, think*.
ex-pandō, -ere, -pandī, -pansus, *spread out*.
experior, -iri, expertus sum, *try*.
explōrātor, -ōris [explōrō], m., *explorer; spy, scout*.
ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put out, expose*.
ex-poscō, -ere, -poposci, —, *ask, entreat, demand*.
ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*fight it out*), *take (a town) by storm, capture*.
exsanguis, -e, *bloodless, lifeless*.
exsilium, -ī, n., *exile*.
ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look out for, wait for, expect*.
ex-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe out, expire, die*.
exsul, -is, m. and f., *an exile*.
exsulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be or live in exile*. [i]oice.
exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *exult, re-*
extrā, adv., or prep. with acc., *outside, outside of, beyond*.
extrēmus, -a, -um, *extreme, farthest* (186, 2), *end of*.
exul, -ulis, m., *exile*.

F

faba, -ae, f., *bean*.
faber, -brī, m., *carpenter, workman*.
fābula, -ae, f., *story, fable*.
faciēs, ēī, f., *face, appearance*.

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do, build*.
factum, -ī, n., *deed*.
faenum, -ī, n., *hay*.
falsus, -a, -um, *false, deceitful*.
falx, -cis, f., *sickle*.
fāma, -ae, f., *report, tradition, reputation, fame*.
famēs, -is, f., *hunger*.
fānum, -ī, n., *shrine, sanctuary, temple*.
fascis, -is, m., *bundle*; plur., *the fasces*, a bundle of rods with an axe carried before the magistrates as an emblem of authority.
fātum, -ī, n., *fate*.
Faustulus, -ī, m., *Faustulus, a shepherd*. [support.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *favour*,
favus, -ī, m., *honey-comb*.
fēlēs, -is, f., *cat*.
fēmina, -ae, f., *woman*.
fenestra, -ae, f., *window*.
fera, -ae, f., *wild beast, animal*.
ferāx, -ācis [ferō], *fertile, productive*.
ferē, adv., postpositive (435, n. 6), *nearly, almost, generally*.
feriō, -īre, *strike, kick*.
fermē, adv., *nearly*.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bring, bear, endure, carry off*.
ferōciter [ferōx], adv., *fiercely*.
ferōx, -ōcis, *fierce; ferocious*.
ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, steel; sword*.
ferus, -a, -um, *fierce, wild*; as noun, *a wild beast*.
fētīālis, -e, *fetial*, pertaining to the college of priests who declared war and peace, etc.
fictilis, -e [fingō], *fashioned of clay, earthen*.
fidēlis, -e, *faithful*.
Fidēnae, -ārum, f., plur., *Fidenæ, a city*. [Fidenæ.
Fidēnās, -ātis, m., *an inhabitant of*

- fidēs**, -ei, f., *faith, trust, fidelity, trustworthiness, assurance.*
- fidūcia**, -ae, f., *confidence, assurance.*
- fidus**, -a, -um, *faithful, trusty.*
- figūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *fashion.*
- filia**, -ae, f., *daughter.*
- filius**, -i, m., *son.*
- finis**, -is, m., *limit, end, boundary*; plur., *territory.*
- finitimus**, -a, -um [finis], *near, neighbouring*; plur., *neighbours.*
- fiō**, fieri, factus sum (supplies pass. to **faciō**), *be made, be done, become, happen* (484).
- firmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [firmus], *strengthen.*
- firmus**, -a, -um, *strong.*
- flāgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *demand, entreat.*
- flāmen**, -inis, m., *priest.*
- flamma**, -ae, f., *flame.*
- flāvus**, -a, -um, *yellow.*
- fleō**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētūrus, *weep.*
- flōs**, flōris, m., *flower.*
- fluctus**, -ūs [fluō], m., *wave.*
- fluitō**, -āre, -āvi, — [fluō], *float.*
- flūmen**, -inis [fluō], n., *river, stream.*
- fluō**, -ere, flūxi, fluxūrus, *flow.*
- focus**, -i, m., *hearth.* [ful.]
- foedus**, -a, -um, *foul, horrible, shameful.*
- foedus**, foederis, n., *treaty.*
- fontanus**, -a, -um [fons], *spring.*
- fore**, for futūrum esse (480).
- forma**, -ae, f., *shape, appearance.*
- forte**, adv., *by chance.*
- fortis**, -e, *brave.*
- fortiter** [fortis], adv., *bravely.*
- fortūna**, -ae, f., *fortune, good fortune.*
- forum**, -i, n., *the forum, the great open square at Rome, containing the market-place and the courts of law.*
- forus**, -i, m., *row of seats.*
- fossa**, -ae, f., *ditch.*
- foveō**, -ēre, fōvi, fōtus, *warm, cherish.*
- fragor**, -ōris, m., *crash, roar.*
- frangō**, -ere, frēgi, frāctus, *break.*
- frāter**, -tris, m., *brother.*
- frāternus**, -a, -um [frāter], *of a brother, fraternal.*
- fraudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *cheat.*
- fraus**, fraudis, f., *fraud.*
- fremō**, -ere, -ui, -itūrus, *roar.*
- fretum**, -i, n., *strait, sea.*
- frigus**, -oris, n., *cold.*
- frons**, frondis, f., *foliage.*
- frons**, frontis, f., *forehead, head.*
- frūmentum**, -i, n., *grain.*
- fruor**, -i, fructus sum, *enjoy.*
- frustum**, -i, n., *bit, piece.*
- [**frux**.] frūgis, f. (more common in plur.), *fruits of the earth.*
- Fufetius**, -i, m., *Fufetius, an Alban general.*
- fuga**, -ae, f., *flight.*
- fugiō**, -ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, *flee, escape, avoid.* [deserter.]
- fugitivus**, -i [fugiō], m., *fugitive.*
- fulgeō**, -ere, fulsi, —, *shine, glitter.*
- fulgur**, -uris, n., *lightning.*
- fulmen**, -inis [fulgeō], n., *lightning, thunderbolt.*
- fūmus**, -i, m., *smoke.*
- fundāmen**, -inis, n., *foundation.*
- fundō**, -ere, fūdi, fūsus, *pour, pour out, scatter, rout.*
- fūnereus**, -a, -um, *funereal.*
- fungor**, -i, fūnctus sum, *perform.*
- fungus**, -i, m., *mushroom.*
- fūnus**, -eris, n., *funeral, corpse.*
- furiōsus**, -a, -um, *mad, raging.*
- furtum**, -i, n., *theft.*
- futūrus**, -a, -um [sum], *about to be, future.*
- Gabii**, -ōrum, plur., m., *Gabii, a town of Latium.*

Gabīnus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Gabii*.

Gabīnus, -a, -um, *of Gabii*.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet*.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*.

gallīna, -ae, a *hen*.

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul*.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvisus sum (487), *rejoice*.

gaudium, -ī [gaudeō], n., *joy*.

gelidus, -a, -um, *cold*.

gelū, -ūs, n., *frost*.

geminātus, -a, -um, *doubled*.

geminus, -ī, m., *twin-born, twin*.

gemitus, -ūs, m., *lamentation*.

gemma, -ae, f., *gem*.

gemmātus, -a, -um, *set with gems, jewelled*.

gena, -ae, f., *check*.

Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges.

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law*.

genitor, -ōris [gignō], m., *father*.

gēns, -tis, f., *tribe, nation, clan, family*.

genu, -ūs, n., *knee*.

genus, -eris, n., *kind, class, race*.

Germānus, -ī, m., *a German*.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *manage, do, wage (war); wear, carry*.

Getae, -ārum, m., a tribe living on the Danube.

Geticus, -a, -um, *Getic, of the Getae*.

glaciēs, -cī, f., *ice*.

gladius, -ī, m., *sword*.

glōria, -ae, f., *reputation, glory, fame*. [boast.]

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum [glōria],

gradus, -ūs, m., *step, grade*.

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.

grandis, -e, *big, large, great*.

grātia, -ae [grātus], f., *favour, influence; plur., thanks, gratitude*.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [grātus], *congratulate*.

grātus, -a, -um, *grateful, pleasing*.

gravis, -e, *heavy, severe*.

graviter [gravis], adv., *heavily, severely*.

gutta, -ae, f., *drop*.

guttur, -uris, n., *throat*.

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, consider*. [inhabit.]

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dwelt, live*,

Haeduī, -ōrum, m., *the Haedui*, a tribe of Gaul.

haedus, -ī, m., *goat, kid*.

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook*.

hasta, -ae, f., *spear*.

Hastilia, -ae, f., *Hastilia*, the name of the senate-house built by Hostilius.

haud, adv., *not*.

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, *drink* (partic. as noun, *a draught*).

Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetii*, a powerful tribe in Gaul.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian*.

herba, -ae, f., *grass, plant*.

hiberna, -ōrum, n. plur., *winter quarters*.

hic, haec, hōc, demons. pron., *this* (252); as pers. pron., *he, she, it*.

hic, adv., *here, in this place*.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -atūrus [hiems], *pass the winter, winter*.

hiems, -mis, f., *winter*.

hilaris, -e, *merry*.

hinc, adv., *hence, from here; hinc . . . hinc, here . . . there, or now . . . now*.

hirundo, -inis, f., *swallow*.

Hister, -tri, m., *the Danube*.

homō, -inis, m. and f., *a person, man*.

Horātīi, -ōrum, m., *the Horatii*, the brothers who fought the Curiatii.

Horātius, -ī, m., *Horatius*, a man's name.

horrendus, -a, -um, *horrible*.

horror, -ōris, m., *horror*.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *exhort, encourage*.

hortus, -ī, m., *garden*.

hospes, -itis, m., *host, guest, stranger*.

hostis, -is, m. and f., *enemy*.

Hostius Hostilius, -ī, m., *Hostius Hostilius*, who defeated the Sabines.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *human*.

humilis, -e, *low, lowly*.

humus, -ī, f., *ground, soil*.

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie (low), lie (slain)*.

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl*.

iactō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *toss about, talk about*.

iam, adv., *now, already, at last* ; **nōn iam**, *no longer*.

Iāniculum, -ī, n., *the Janiculum*, a hill of Rome (not one of the seven) west of the Tiber.

iānua, -ac, f., *gate, door*.

Iānus, -ī, m., *Janus*, the god of doors, passages, etc.

Iānus, -ī, m., *the temple of Janus*.

ibi, adv., *there, in that place*.

icō, ere, icī, ictus, *strike, form* (an alliance), *make* (a treaty).

ictus, -ūs [icō], m., *blow, stroke*.

idem, eadem, idem, demons. pron. (246), *the same*.

Idūs, -uum, plur., f., *the Ides*.

igitur, conj., *therefore, then*.

i-ignorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *be ignorant of*.

ignis, -is, m., *fire*.

Iliacus, -a, -um, *Trojan*.

ille, illa, illud, demons. pron., *that* ; as pers. pron. *he, she, it* (254).

illic, adv., *there*.

imāgo, -inis, f., *image, recollection*.

imbēcillus, -a, -um, *weak*.

imber, -bris, m., *rain*.

imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *imbue, affect*.

im-manis, -e, *huge, vast, dreadful*.

impedimentum, -ī [impediō], n., *hindrance* ; plur., *baggage, baggage-trains*.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *impede, hinder*.

imperātor, -ōris [imperō], m., *commander, general* (in chief).

imperitus, -a, -um, *unskilled, ignorant*.

imperium, -ī [imperō], n., *command, rule, supreme authority*.

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *command, rule, order*.

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *gain a request, prevail*.

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack ; force, fury*.

im-pius, -a, -um, *wicked*.

implicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, or -uī, -itus, *implicate, involve, fall* (sick), *be disabled* (by sickness).

im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place on*.

im-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *bring in, import*.

imprudentia, -ae, f., *want of foresight, indiscretion, imprudence*.

imus, -a, -um, *lowest* (with noun, *the bottom of . . .*).

in, prep. with abl., *in, on, in the time of* ; with the acc., *into, to, with a view to, for*.

inānis, -e, *empty, useless, vain*.

incendium, -ī [incendō], n., *fire*.

incendō, -ere, -di, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn, inflame, excite*.

in-certus, -a, -um, *uncertain*.

inchoō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *commence*.

incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *incite*.

inclāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *cry out, call upon*.

inclinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *incline, waver, give way*.

inclitus, -a, -um, *celebrated*.

incola, -ae, f., *inhabitant*.

incolō, -ere, -uī, *dwell, live in, inhabit*.

in-crēdibilis, -e, *incredible*.

incredō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *sound, rattle; upbraid, rebuke*.

incursiō, -ōnis [in-currō], f., *incur-sion, raid*.

inde, adv., *from there, thereupon, thence, from that time*.

index, -icis, m., *informer; index, sign*.

indicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [index], *indicate, declare*.

indicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, *declare (war)*.

indignāns, -antis, *indignant*.

in-dignus, -a, -um, *unworthy, undeserving*.

in-docilis, -e, *untaught*.

indolēs, -is, f., *character, disposition, quality*.

in-dūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductus, *induce, lead on, influence, apply*.

indulgentia, -ae, f., *indulgence, fondness, favour*.

in-dūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *harden*.

inēō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go into, enter, begin, form (a plan), find (a way)*.

in-ermis, -e [arma] (267, b), *unarmed*.

in-fāmia, -ae, f., *disgrace*.

īnfāns, -antis, m., *infant, child*.

in-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring upon, make upon, inflict*.

infēstus, -a, -um, *hostile*.

in-firmus, -a, -um, *weak*.

in-fit [in-fiō], impers., *begins, speaks*.

in-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *flow in*.

ingenium, -ī, n., *disposition, talents*.

ingēns, -entis, *great, huge, terrible*.

ingenuus, -a, -um, *free-born, delicate*.

in-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum [in-gra-dior], *advance, enter, undertake*.

inhiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *gaze at, long for, be eager for*.

in-hūmānus, -a, -um, *inhuman*.

in-imicus, -a, -um [amicus], *unfriendly*.

initium, -ī [ineō], n., *beginning*.

iniūria, -ae, f., *wrong, injustice, injury*.

iniūstus, -a, -um, *unjust*.

inopia, -ae, f., *want, lack*.

inquit, defect. verb, *he says*, used after one or two words of a direct quotation.

in-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow after, pursue*.

insignis, -e, *distinguished*.

insolenter, adv., *insolently, haughtily*.

in-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [in-statuō], *institute, appoint, set up, establish; train*.

institūtiō, -ōnis [in-stituō], f., *arrangement, custom, training*.

institūtum, -ī [in-stituō], n., *institution, custom*.

instruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus, *draw up, arrange*.

insula, -ae, f., *island*.

in-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be in, be on*.

integer, -gra, -grum, *unimpaired, fresh*.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *know, understand*.

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*.

inter-clūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [claudō], *shut off, block up, intercept, hinder*.

inter-dum, adv., *sometimes*.

interea, adv., *meanwhile*.

interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus [faciō], *kill*.

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime*.

interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptus, *kill*.

interpres, -etis, m. and f., *interpreter*.

inter-rēgnum, -ī, n., *interregnum*.

inter-vallum, -ī, n., *interval*.

introrsus [intro-versus], adv., *inwards*.

intus, adv., *within*.

in-validus, -a, -um, *weak*.

in-vehō, -ere, -vēcī, -vectus, *carry in*; in pass., *be carried on, borne on*; *ride*.

in-veniō, -īre, -vēcī, -ventus, *come upon, find, invent, discover*.

invidia, -ae, f., *envy, greed, jealousy, criticism*.

in-volvō, -ere, -vī, -volūtus, *wrap up*.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demons. adj. and pronoun, *self, very* (256 a-d).

ira, -ae, f., *anger, wrath*.

irātus, -a, -um, *angry, enraged*.

irritō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *incite, stir up, irritate*.

is, ea, id, demons. pron., *this, that*; as pers. pron., *he, she, it* (245, 248).

iste, ista, istud, demons. pron., *that* (255).

ita, adv., *so, thus*; **ita . . . ut, so . . . that, or as to**.

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*.

Italus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Italy*.

ita-que, conj., *and so, therefore*.

item, adv., *likewise, also*.

iter, itineris, n., *road, route, march, course*.

iterum, adv., *a second time, again*.

Īthacē, -ēs, f., *Ithaca, the home of Ulysses*.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, bid*.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge, decide, consider*.

iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, yoke of oxen*.

iūmentum, -ī [for iugmentum], n., *yoke-animal, beast of burden*.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus, *join, unite*.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter, the supreme divinity of the Romans*.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice, law*.

iussū, abl. only, *by order*.

iussum, -ī [iubeō], n., *command*.

iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice*.

iūstus, -a, -um, *just, regular*.

iuvenca, -ae, f., *cow, heifer*.

iuvenis, -e, *young*; as noun, *young man, youth*.

iuventūs, -ūtis [iuvenis], f., *a body of young men, youth*.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid*.

L

L. = **Lūcius**, -ī, m., *Lucius*.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus, Cæsar's lieutenant*.

labor, -ōris, m., *labor, hardship*.

lābor, -ī, lapsus, *glide, slip, fall*.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *labor, work; suffer from*.

laccessō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *provoke, attack, assail*.

lacrima, -ae, f., *a tear*.

lacteo, -ēre, *suck, be a suckling*.

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake*.

laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyous*.

laevus, -a, -um, *on the left*.

lāmina, -ae, f., *plate (of metal)*.

laniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tear in pieces*.

lapideus, -a, -um [lapis], *of stone, stony*.

lapis, -idis, m., *a stone*.

largitiō, -ōnis, f., *lavish giving, bribery*.

lascīvus, -a, -um, *playful, mischievous*.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie hid.*
Latīnus, -ī, m., *Latinus*, a king in Latium.
Latīnus, -a, -um, *of Latium, Latin.*
Latium, -ī, n., *Latium*, a country of Italy.
latus, -eris, n., *side, flank.*
lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad.*
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus], *praise.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
Lāvīnia, -ae, f., *Lavinia*, daughter of Latinus.
Lavīnium, -ī, n., *Lavinium*, a city founded by Æneas in honour of Lavinia.
lēgātīō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lēgātus, -ī, m., *deputy, ambassador ; lieutenant.*
legiō, -ōnis, f., *a legion.* [read.
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose, select ;*
lēnis, -e, *smooth, soft.*
lēnitās, -ātis [lēnis], f., *mildness, gentleness, lenity.*
leō, -ōnis, m., *lion.*
levis, -e, *light, unsubstantial.*
lēvis, -e, *smooth, bald.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law, a stipulation, a (binding) agreement.*
libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*
liber, -brī, m., *book.*
liber, -era, -erum, *free.*
liberī, -ōrum, plur., m., *children (64).*
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liber], *free, liberate.*
libertās, -ātis [liber], f., *liberty, freedom.*
Libycus, -a, -um, *Libyan, African.*
licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, *it is allowed, (one) may (489).*
licitor, -ōris, m., *a licitor*, an official attendant of a Roman magistrate.
lilium, -ī, n., *lily.*
limus, -ī, m., *mud.*
Lingonēs, -um, plur., m., *Lingones*, a tribe of Gaul.

linō, -ere, livi and lēvi, litus, *smear.*
linter, -tris, f., *a boat.*
liquidus, -a, -um, *liquid, pure.*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore, beach.*
lituus, -ī, m., *bugle, trumpet.*
locus, -ī, m., *place, position ; plur., n., loca, -ōrum.*
longē [longus], adv., *long, far, by far, far away.*
longinquus, -a, -um, *long, long continued, long ago.*
longus, -a, -um, *long.*
loquax, -ācis, *talkative, twittering.*
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *speak, talk.*
Lūcius Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Lucius Tarquinius*, one of the kings of Rome.
Lucretia, -ae, f., *Lucretia*, wife of Collatinus.
luctus, -ūs, m., *grief.*
lūdicrum, -ī, n., *sport, mockery.*
lūdus, -ī, m., *sport, game.*
lūmen, -inis, n., *light, a light.*
lūna, -ae, f., *moon.*
luō, -ēre, lui, *pay.*
lupa, -ae, f., *wolf, she-wolf.*
lupus, -ī, m., *wolf, he-wolf.*
lustrum, -ī, n., *a piece of five years.*
lutum, -ī, n., *mud.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight, day.*

M

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spot, stain, soil.*
maereō, -ēre, *mourn.*
maestus, -a, -um, *sad, gloomy.*
magis, adv., *rather (194).*
magister, -tri, m., *master, director, leader.* [officer.
magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistrate.*
magnificentia, -ae, f., *magnificence.*
māgnificus, -a, -um, *magnificent, splendid, lofty.*
magnitūdō, -inis [māgnus], f., *greatness, size, magnitude.*

- māgnopere** [abl. **māgno opere**, with *great labour*], adv., *very much, greatly, earnestly*.
- māgnus**, -a, -um, *great, large, big*.
- male** [malus], adv., *badly*; with adj. or partic. = *not*.
- male-dīcō**, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *revile*.
- maleficium**, -ī, n., *harm, mischief*.
- maleficus**, -ī, m., *an evil-doer*.
- mālō**, mālī, mālui, — [magis-volō], *wish rather, choose, prefer*.
- malum**, -ī, n., *pest, evil*.
- malus**, -a, -um, *bad*.
- malva**, -ae, f., *mallow*.
- mandātum**, -ī [mandō], n., *command*.
- māne**, indecl., n., *morning*.
- manēō**, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *wait, remain*.
- mānēs**, -ium, m. (pl. only), *ghosts, shades*.
- Mānilius**, -ī, m., *Manilius*, a Roman family name.
- Mānlius**, -ī, m., *Manlius*, a Roman family name.
- manus**, -ūs, f., *hand*; *a force or band* (of troops).
- Mārcus**, -ī, m., *Marcus*, a Roman personal name.
- mare**, -is, n., *sea*.
- marmoreus**, -a, -um, adj., *marble*.
- Mārs**, -tis, m., *Mars*, the god of war.
- Martigena**, -ae [Martem, gignō], m. and f., *child of Mars*.
- māssa**, -ae, f., *mass*.
- māter**, -tris, f., *mother*.
- māteria**, -ae, f., *material, means*.
- mātrimōnium**, -ī [māter], n., *marriage, matrimony*.
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten, make haste*.
- Māvors**, -ortis, m., *Mars*, the god of war.
- māximē** [māximus], adv., *mostly, most, especially*.
- medius**, -a, -um, *middle, midway, the middle of*; as noun, *the middle*.
- mel**, mellis, n., *honey*.
- memor**, -oris, *mindful, remembering, desirous of*.
- memoria**, -ae [memor], f., *memory, record*.
- mens**, mentis, f., *mind*.
- mensa**, -ae, f., *table*.
- mēnsis**, -is, m., *a month*.
- mercātor**, -ōris, m., *merchant, trader*.
- Mercurius**, -ī, m., *Mercury*, the messenger of the gods.
- mereor**, -ērī, meritis sum, *merit, deserve*.
- merum**, -ī, n., *unmixed wine, wine*.
- messis**, -is, f., *harvest*.
- mētior**, -īrī, mensus sum, *measure, traverse*.
- metō**, -ere, messuī, messus, *mow, cut off*.
- Mettius Curtius**, -ī, m., *Mettius Curtius*, a Sabine chief.
- metus**, -ūs, m., *fear, dread*.
- micō**, -āre, micuī, —, *flash, gleam, quiver*.
- migrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *move, remove, migrate, go*.
- mīles**, -itis, m., *soldier*.
- militāris**, -e [mīles], *military, war-like*.
- militia**, -ae [mīles], f., *military service*.
- mīlitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *serve as a soldier*.
- mille**, sing., indecl. num. adj., *a thousand*; plur., noun, **mīlia**, -ium, n., *thousands*.
- minae**, -ārum, f. (plur. only), *threats*.
- minax**, -ācis, adj., *threatening*.
- minimē**, adv., *least*.
- mīrābilis**, -e [mīror], *wonderful, admirable*.
- mīror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder at, wonder; admire*.

misceō, -ēre, -ui, *mistus* and *mixtus*, *mix*.

miser, -era, -erum, *pitiſul*, *wretched*, *poor*, *miserable*.

mītigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*mitis*], *soften*, *mitigate*.

mītio, -e, *soft*, *mild*, *gentle*.

mittō, -ere, *mīsi*, *missus*, *send*.

modo, *adv.*, *only*, *merely*; *recently*; *now*.

modus, -i, *m.*, *manner*, *way*.

moenia, -ium, *plur.*, *n.*, *walls*, *fortifications*.

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, *mass*.

mollis, -is, *soft*, *tender*.

moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, *advise*, *warn*.

monimentum, -i [*moneō*], *n.*, *memorial*, *monument*.

monitum, -i [*moneō*], *n.*, *warning*, *suggestion*.

mōns, *montis*, *m.*, *hill*, *mountain*.

monstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*moneō*], *show*.

monstrum, -i [*moneō*], *n.*, *monster*.

mora, -ae, *f.*, *delay*.

morbus, -i, *m.*, *disease*, *sickness*.

morior, *morī*, *mortuus* *sum*, *die*.

moror, -āri, *morātus*, *delay*.

mors, -tis, *f.*, *death*.

mortuus, -a, -um [*morior*], *dead*.

mōs, *mōris*, *m.*, *habit*, *custom*, *disposition*.

mōtus, -ūs [*moveō*], *m.*, *motion*.

moveō, -ēre, *mōvi*, *mōtus*, *move*, *prepare*; *in pass.*, *proceed*.

mox, *adv.*, *soon*.

mūgītus, -ūs, *m.*, *lowing*.

Mulciber, -eris or -eri, *Vulcan*.

mulier, -eris, *f.*, *woman*.

multitūdō, -inis [*multus*], *f.*, *multitude*, *great number*; *the people*.

multus, -a, -um, *much*; *plur.*, *many*.

mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *fortify*.

mūnitiō, -ōnis [*mūniō*], *f.*, *fortifying*, *fortification*.

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, *duty*, *service*; *gift*, *entertainment*.

murmur, -uris, *n.*, *murmur*, *moan*.

mūrus, -i, *m.*, *wall*.

mūs, *mūris*, *m.* and *f.*, *mouse*.

N

naenia, -ae, *f.*, *ditty*, *lullaby*, *charm*.

nam, *conj.*, *for*.

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *narrate*, *tell*.

nāscor, -i, *nātus* *sum*, *be born*.

nāta, -ae [*nascor*], *f.*, *daughter*.

nātus, -i [*nascor*], *m.*, *son*.

nauta, -ae, *m.*, *sailor*.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, *ship*, *vessel*.

-ne, *enclitic*, *sign of question*.

nē, *conj.*, *lest*, *that not*.

nec, *conj.*, *short form of neque* used before consonants, *and not*; *neither*, *nor*.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, *necessary*, *inevitable*.

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *kill*.

neglegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, *neglect*, *overlook*.

negōtium, -i, *n.*, *business*, *trouble*; *instructions*.

nēmō, -inī, -inem (*no gen. or abl.*) [*nē-homō*], *m.*, *no one*, *nobody*.

nemorōsus, -a, -um, *woody*.

nemus, -oris, *n.*, *grove*, *wood*.

nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*, *grandson*.

neque, *conj.* (*shortened to nec* before some consonants), *and not*, *neither*; **neque** . . . **neque**, *neither* . . . *nor*.

nēquiquam, *adv.*, *in vain*.

ne-sciō, -īre, -īi, -ītūrus [*sciō*], *not to know*.

ne-scius, -a, -um [*sciō*], *ignorant*, *unconscious*.

nē-ve = **et nē**.

nex, *necis*, *f.*, *death*.

niger, -gra, -grum, *black*.

nihil, or **nīl**, *indecl.*, *n.*, *nothing*.

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except*.
niteō, -ēre, —, —, *shine, glisten*.
nitor, -ī, *nisus* and *nixus* sum, *strive, labour, lean*.
niveus, -a, -um [nix], *snow-white*.
nix, nivis, f., *snow*.
nōbilis, -e, *well known, noble, excellent, high-born*.
nōbilitās, -ātis [nōbilis], f., *nobleness, excellence, nobility, fame*.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [nōn-volō], *be unwilling*.
nōmen, -inis [nōscō], n. (that by which a thing is known), *name*.
nōn, adv., *not*.
nōn-dum, adv., *not yet*.
nōn-ne, see 56, 6 and b.
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn* ;
nōvī, *I have learned, therefore I know*.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *our*.
notō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *mark*.
Notus, -ī, m., *Notus, the south wind*.
novemdiālis, -e, *of nine days, nine-day*.
noviens, adv. [novem], *nine times*.
novus, -a, -um, *new* ; **novissimus**, *newest, latest, rear (of army)*.
nox, noctis, f., *night*.
nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud*.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, *marry*.
nūdus, -a, -um, *naked, bare*.
nūllus, -a, -um [nē-ullus], *not any, no, no one, none*.
Numa Pompilius, -ī, m., *Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome*.
numerus, -ī, m., *number*.
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor, son of King Silvius*.
numquam or **nunquam** [nē-umquam], adv., *never*.
nunc, adv., *now*.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *announce, report*.

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message*.
nūper, adv., *lately, recently*.
nūptiae, -ārum [nūbō], plur., f., *marriage rights, marriage*.
nūsquā [nē-usquam], adv., *nowhere*.
nūtriō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *nourish, bring up*.
nutrix, icis, f., *nurse*.

O

obeō, -īre, -īi, -ītūrus, *attend to, perform*.
obex, obīicis [ob-iaciō], c., *barrier*.
ob-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *spring up*.
ob-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rūtus, *bury, cover*.
obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *beseech, entreat*.
obses, -idis, m., *hostage*.
ob-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *be in the way of, hinder, injure*.
ob-testor, -ārī, -tātus sum, *implore*.
ob-tineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus [teneō], *hold, obtain*.
occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsus [ob-caedō], *cut down, kill*.
oc-cido, -ere, occidi, occāsurus, *fall, perish*.
occiduus, -a, -um [ob-cadō], *sinking*.
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *seize, occupy, be beforehand with, surprise*.
oc-currō, -ere-curri, -cursūrus, *meet*.
Ocelum, -ī, n., *Ocelum, a town in Gaul*.
octō, num. adj., *eight*.
octōgintā, num. adj., *eighty*.
oculus, -ī, m., *eye*.
ōdī, -isse, ōsūrus, dep. verb, not used in the present system, 99, b., *hate*.
odōrātus, -a, -um, *scented*.
offendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus, *offend, hurt (the feelings, animus)*.
offēnsiō, -ōnis [offendō], f., *offense*.

ōlim, adv., *once, formerly*.
ōmen, -inis, n., *omen*.
omnis, -e, *all, every*.
onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight*.
opera, -ae [opus], f., *service, help*.
oportet, -ēre, -uit, *it behooves, it is necessary, (one) ought*.
oppidum, -ī, n., *town*.
opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus, *fall upon, press hard, crush*.
op-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-pugnō], *attack, besiege*.
[ops], **opis**, f., *aid, power, might, resources; in plur., opēs, opum, riches*.
opus, -eris, n., *work; opus est, there is need*.
ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast*.
ōrātiō, -ōnis [ōrō], f., *speech, oration, talk, argument*.
orbis, -is, m., *circle, world*.
orbus, -a, -um, *bereft, bereaved*.
ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, rank, line*.
Orgetorix, -igis, m., *Orgetorix, a chief among the Helvetii*.
orior, -iri, *ortus sum, rise, arise, begin*.
ornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *adorn*.
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plead, speak, entreat*.
ortus, ūs [orior], m., *east*.
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face*.
os, ossis, n., *bone*.
ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *show*.
ōtium, -ī, n., *leisure, rest, quiet, peace*.
ovis, -is, f., *a sheep*.
ōvum, -ī, n., *egg*.
ovō, -āre, —, —, *rejoice*.

P. = Pūblius, -ī, m., *Publius, a personal name*.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pacify, subdue*.
nactum, -ī [pangō], n., *agreement*.

paene, adv., *almost, nearly*.
pāgus, -ī, m., *canton, district*.
palam, adv., *openly*.
Palātium, -ī, n., *the Palatine, one of the seven hills of Rome*.
Palēs, -is, m., *Pales, god of shepherds and cattle*.
palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.
pandus, -a, -um, *crooked-backed*.
papāver, -eris, n., *a poppy*.
pār, pāris, adj., *equal*.
parātus, -a, -um, *prepared, ready*.
parcus, -a, -um, *thrifty*.
parēns, -entis, m. and f., *a parent*.
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey*.
pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, lay (an egg)*.
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare, get ready, procure*.
pars, -tis, f., *part, side; direction*.
parvus, -a, -um, *small*.
pāscō, -ere, pāvi, pāstus, *feed*.
passus, -ūs, m., *a step*.
pāstor, -ōris [pāscō], m., *a shepherd*.
patefaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factus [pateō], *lay open, reveal*.
pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, be evident, be exposed*.
pater, -tris, m., *father; plur., fathers, senators*.
paternus, -a, -um, *ancestral*.
patiens, -entis [patior], *patient, capable of enduring*.
patria, -ae [patrius], f., *native land, country*.
patrius, -a, -um [pater], *of a father, fatherly, paternal*.
pauci, -ae, -a, plur. only, *few*.
paulō, adv., *by a little, little*.
paulum, adv., *a little*.
pauper, -eris, adj., *poor*.
pavidus, -a, -um, *trembling, alarmed, in fright*.
pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.
pectus, -oris, n., *breast, heart*.

- pecūnia**, -ae, f., *money*.
- pedes**, -itis [pēs], m., *foot-soldier* ; plur., *infantry*.
- peditātus**, -ūs [pedes], m., *infantry*.
- pellis**, -is, f., *skin, hide*.
- pellō**, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *force, thrust, beat, drive, rout*.
- pendeō**, -ēre, pependī, pensūrus, *hang*.
- penitus**, adv., *deeply, utterly*.
- penna**, -ae, f., *feather, wing, pinion*.
- peperit**, see **pariō**.
- per**, prep. with acc., *through, during, over*.
- per-agō**, -ere, -ēgī, -actus, *go through, carry out ; explain ; work up, till*.
- per-cutiō**, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [per-quatīō], *strike, hurt*.
- per-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *lose*.
- per-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, run (a wall)*.
- peregrīnus**, -a, -um [per-ager], *foreign, strange*.
- per-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *accomplish, finish*.
- perfidus**, -a, -um, *faithless, treacherous, perfidious*.
- periculum**, -ī, n., *trial, danger, risk, peril*.
- peritus**, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled*.
- per-luō**, -ere, -luī, -lūtus, *wash thoroughly*.
- per-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move greatly, trouble*.
- perniciēs**, -ēī, f., *injury, ruin, destruction*.
- per-opportūnē**, adv., *very opportunely, very fortunately*.
- perpetuus**, -a, -um, *continuous, unbroken, perpetual*.
- perpetuō**, adv., *perpetually*.
- per-sequor**, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue*.
- per-stringō**, -ere, -inxī, -ictus, *run through, seize, move deeply*.
- per-suādeō**, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, convince*.
- per-territus**, -a, -um, *alarmed, frightened*.
- per-tineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, — [tencō], *extend, reach, pertain to*.
- perturbātiō**, -ōnis, f., *alarm, disturbance*.
- per-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come through, reach, arrive*.
- pēs**, pedis, m., *foot*.
- pestilentia**, -ae, f., *pestilence*.
- petō**, -ere, -ivī (-iī), -itus, *beg, seek ; make for, attack*.
- Phineius**, -a, -um, *of Phineus* (a blind prophet who was tormented by Harpies).
- pīetas**, -ātis, f., *devotion, loyalty, patriotism, piety*.
- piger**, -a, -um, *indolent, lazy*.
- pignus**, -oris, n., *pledge*.
- pigritia**, -ae, f., *disinclination*.
- pilleus**, -ī, m., *cap*.
- pīlum**, -ī, n., *javelin*.
- Pistor**, -ōris, m., *miller ; Pistor*, a title given to Jupiter.
- pīus**, -a, -um, *good, dutiful ; right, fitting*.
- placeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *please*.
- placidus**, -a, -um, *calm*.
- plangō**, -ere, -nxi, -nctus, *strike*.
- plānitīēs**, -ēī, f., *plain*.
- plēbs**, plēbis, f., *the people, the common people, the plebeians*.
- plēnus**, -a, -um, *full*.
- pluit**, -ere, pluisset, impers., *it rains*.
- plūma**, -ae, f., *feather*.
- plūrimus**, -a, -um, *most, very much*.
- plūs**, plūris, *more*.
- pluvia**, -ae, f., *rain*.
- poena**, -ae, f., *punishment*.
- poēta**, -ae, m., *poet*.
- pollex**, -icis, m, *thumb*.
- polliceor**, -ēri, -itus sum, *promise*.
- polus**, -ī, m., *sky*.

- Pōmētia**, -ae, f., *Pometia*, a town of the Volsci.
- pondus**, -eris, n., *weight*.
- pōnō**, -ere, posuī, positus, *place, put, lay aside, pitch* (camp).
- pōns**, pontis, m., *a bridge*.
- pontifex**, -icis, m., *high priest, pontiff, pontifex*.
- pontus**, -i, m., *sea*.
- populor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ravage, lay waste, destroy*.
- populus**, -i, m., *people*.
- portū**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry, bring*.
- portus**, -ūs, m., *port, harbour*.
- poscō**, -ere, poposci, —, *ask, beg, request, demand*. [possess.]
- possideō**, -ēre, possēdī, possessus, *possess*.
- possum**, posse, potui, — (480), *be able, can*.
- post**, prep. with acc., *after*; adv., *afterwards*.
- postea**, adv., *afterwards*.
- posterus**, -a, -um, *following next*;
posterī, plur., *posterity, descendants*.
- postis**, -is, m., *post, door-post*.
- postquam**, conj., *after*.
- postulāta**, -ōrum [postulō], plur., n., *things demanded, demands*.
- postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, request, demand*.
- potēns**, -tis [possum], *powerful*.
- potentia**, -ae [potēns], f., *power*.
- potestās**, -ātis [possum], f., *power, authority; opportunity, chance*.
- potior**, -irī, -ītus sum, *get control*.
- pōtus**, -a, -um, *drunk*.
- prae**, prep. with abl., *before, in the presence of*.
- praebeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus [for **prae-hibeō** from **prae-habeō**], *hold before, offer, furnish, show*.
- praeceps**, -cipitis [prae-caput], *head-long*.
- praeda**, -ae, f., *plunder, booty*.
- prae-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *put at the head of, put in command, appoint*.
- prae-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send ahead*.
- prae-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put in charge of*.
- prae-scribō**, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *prescribed for, direct*.
- praesēns**, -entis [praesum], *present*.
- praesertim**, adv., *especially*.
- praesidium**, -i, n., *protection, guard*.
- praestantia**, -ae, f., *superiority*.
- prae-struō**, -ere, -struxī, -structus, *block*.
- prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, *be present, be at the head of, have charge of, command, hold* (an office).
- praeter**, prep. with acc., *besides, beyond, except*.
- praeterea**, adv., *besides*.
- praeter-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itus, *go beyond, pass by*.
- praeter-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let go by, pass over*.
- praetor**, -ōris, m., *praetor, commander*.
- prātum**, -i, n., *a meadow*.
- precor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *pray*.
- premō**, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press, oppress*.
- prēndō**, -ere, prēndī, prēnsus, *seize, catch*.
- [**prex**, **precis**], f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty*.
- primus**, -a, -um (186, 1), *first*.
- princeps**, -ipis, m., *leader, chief*.
- principātus**, -ūs, m., *leadership*.
- prior**, -ōris [prae], *former*.
- priscus**, -a, -um, *ancient*.
- priusquam**, conj., *sooner than, before*.
- privātus**, -a, -um, *private*.
- prō**, prep. with abl., *before, in behalf of, instead of, for, in proportion to*.

Procās, -ae, m., *Procas*, king of Alba.
prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, *go forward, advance, proceed.*
procul, adv., *from a distance.*
Proculus, -i, m., *Proculus.*
prō-cumbō, -ere, -cui, -cubitus, *fall forward, fling down.*
prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *advance, come forward, appear.*
prōdigium, -i, n., *omen, prodigy, monster.*
prōditō, -ōnis, f., *treachery.*
proelium, -i, n., *battle.*
prō-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *put forth.*
proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, *set out, start.*
prō-flō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *breathe out.*
pro-fugus, -a, -um [fugiō], *exiled.*
prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [pro-habēō], *prohibit, prevent.*
proinde, adv., *therefore.*
prope, prep. with acc., *near, near to; adv., nearby, nearly, almost.*
properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *hasten.*
propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighbouring; kindred, related; a relative.*
prō-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, *set before, propose.* [of.]
propter, prep. with acc., *on account*
prō-sum, prōdesse, -fui, *be for, be helpful to, benefit, help.*
prō-vidēō, -ēre, -vidi, -visus, *see beforehand, foresee, provide for, provide.*
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*
proximus, -a, -um (186, 1), *nearest, next, last.* [wise.]
prūdēs, -entis, *foreseeing, sagacious.*
prūdentē (prūdēs), adv., *wisely.*
pūbescō, -ere, -bui, —, *clothe one's self.*
pūblicē [publicus], adv., *publicly, as a people.*

pūblicus, -a, -um [for **populicus**, from **populus**], *of the people, public, common.*
pudor, -ōris, m., *shame.*
puella, -ae [puer], f., *girl.*
puer, -erī, m., *boy, slave; pueri*, plur., *children.*
puerilis, -e, *boyish, suitable for boys.*
pugna, -ae, f., *battle.*
pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *fight.*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful, honourable.* [ian.]
Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Punic, Carthaginian.*
pūniō, -īre, -ivi, -itus, *punish.*
pūrē, adv., *simply, faultlessly.*
pūrgamentum, -i, n., *filth, dregs.*
purpureus, -a, -um, *purple, bright.*
pūrus, -a, -um, *pure, clean.*
putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *think, suppose.*

Q

quā, adv., *where.*
quadrāgintā, num. adj., *forty.*
quaerō, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitus, *inquire, ask.*
quālis, -e, (such) *as, what sort of?*
quam, conj., *than; adv., how.*
quam-diū, adv., (as long) *as, how long?* [great?]
quantus, -a, -um, (as great) *as, how*
quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fourth.*
quasi, conj., *as if.*
quater, adv., *four times.*
quattuor, num. adj., *four.*
-que, conj., enclitic (16), *and* (foot-note 2, p. 83); **que . . . que**, *both . . . and.*
queror, -i, questus sum, *complain.*
qui, quae, quod, *who, which.*
quidam, quaedam, quoddam (quidam), *a certain, some one* (402).
quidem, adv., postpositive (435, n. 6), *indeed, surely, to be sure; nē . . . quidem, not . . . even.*
quies, -ētis, f., *quiet, rest.*

quilibet, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet* (*quidlibet*) *any one* (402).

quinque, num. adj., *five*.

Quirīnālis, -e, *Quirinal*, one of the hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, -i, m., *Quirinus*, a title of honour, given to the deified Romulus.

Quirītēs, -ium, m., *Quirites*, a name used in addressing Roman citizens.

quis (**qui**), *quae*, *quid* (*quod*), *who? which? what?* (233).

quis, *qua*, *quid* (*quod*), *any, any one* (402).

quisquam, —, *quidquam* (*quicquam*), *any one (at all)* (402).

quisque *quaeque*, *quidque* (*quodque*), *each one, every* (402).

quīvis, *quaevis*, *quodvis* (*quidvis*), *any one* (402).

quoad, conj., *until, as long as*.

quōcumque, adv., *whithersoever*.

quod, conj., *because*.

quoniam, conj., *since*.

quoque, adv. (after an emphatic word, 435, n. 6), *also, too*.

quot, indecl. adj., (*so many*) *as, how many?*

quotiens, adv., *as often as*.

R

rāmōsus, -a, -um [*rāmus*], *branch-covered*.

rapidus, -a, -um [*rapiō*], *swift*.

rapīna, -ae [*rapiō*], f., *plunder*.

rapiō, -ere, *rapui*, *raptus*, *seize, rob, plunder*.

ratio, -ōnis, f., *scheme, plan*.

ratis, -is, f., *raft*.

raucus, -a, -um, *hoarse, hollow*.

recēnsēō, -ēre, -ui, -sus, *review, inspect*.

recēnsus, -ūs, m., *a review*.

receptāculum, -ī [*recipiō*], n., *receptacle, reservoir*.

recessus, -ūs [*re-cēdō*], m., *corner, nook*.

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*re-capiō*], *take back, receive*; **sē**

recipere, *to take one's self back, retreat, return*.

rector, -ōris [*regō*], m., *steersman*.

recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *regain*.

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *refuse, reject, object*.

red-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus [*re(d)-dō*], *give back, return; render, make*.

red-eō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus [*re(d)-eo*], *go back, return*.

red-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus, *buy back, redeem*.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *renew*.

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead back*.

re-ferō, -ferre, *rettuli*, *relātus*, *bring back, report*.

re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [*faciō*], *rebuild, repair*.

re-fluō, -ere, —, —, *flow back, overflow*.

rēgia, -ae [*rēgius*], f., *royal (palace)*.

rēgina, -ae [*regō*], f., *queen*.

regiō, -ōnis, *region, country, place*.

rēgius, -a, -um [*rēx*], *of the king, kingly, royal*.

rēgno, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*rēgnum*], *rule, reign*.

rēgnum, -ī [*regō*], n., *rule, royalty, supreme power*.

religiō, -ōnis, f., *duty (to the gods), reverence, religion*.

re-liquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictus, *leave, abandon*.

reliquus, -a, -um, *left, remaining, the rest of*.

re-maneō, -ēre, -mansī, —, *stay behind, remain*. [back.

re-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send*

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, *move back, remove, put aside*.

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*, the brother of Romulus.

re-novō, -āre, -āvi, ātus [re-novō, from **novus**, *new*], *renew*.

re-nūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *bring back word, report*.

re-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive back, repel*.

repente, adv., *suddenly*.

repentinus, -a, -um, *sudden*.

re-periō, -īre, repērī, repertus, *find, discover*.

re-peto, -ere, (-īvī) -iī, -ītus, *seek anew, call to mind, demand back*; with **rēs**, *demand restitution*.

re-pleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, *fill up*.

re-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -itus, *put back, replace, place, put, lay aside*.

rēs, -ei, f., *thing, event, circumstance, affair, matter*.

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *break down, demolish*.

re-sideō, -ēre, -sēdī, *remain seated*.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *resist, stop*.

re-solvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus, *melt*.

re-solvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus, *loosen*. [back.

re-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *look*

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *answer, reply*.

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō], *restore*.

re-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [teneō], *retain, restrain*.

re-vertor, -tī, -sus sum [revertī: in perfect system, active], *turn back, return*.

revocāmen, -inis [re-vocō], n., *recall*.

rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.

Rhea Silvia, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine*, the river between Gaul and Germany.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone*, a river of Gaul.

rideō, -ēre, risī, risus, *laugh, laugh at*.

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).

rītus, -ūs, m., *ceremony, custom*.

rīvus, -ī, m., *stream*.

rōbur, -oris, n., *oak*; *strength*.

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *ask, ask for*.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*, the city founded by Romulus.

Rōmānus, -a, -um [Rōma], *Roman*.

Rōmānī, -ōrum, plur., m., *the Romans*.

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus*, the founder of Rome.

rosa, -ae, f., *a rose*.

rostrum, -ī [rōdō], n., *beak*.

ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin*.

rūrsus, adv., *back again, again*.

rūs, rūris, n., *the country* (353, 354)

rusticus, -a, -um, *rustic*. *tarm.*

rūtrum, -ī, n., *shovel*.

S

Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Cæsar.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Sabines*, an Italian people.

sacer, -era, -crum, *sacred*; **sacra**, -ōrum, plur., n., *sacred rites, sacrifices*.

sacerdōs, -ōtis [sacer], m. and f., *priest, priestess*.

saepe, adv., *often*.

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.

salictum, -ī, n., *willow-plantation*.

salūber [or **-bris**], -bris, -bre, *healthful*.

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*.

salvus, -a, -um, *safe*.

Samos, -ī, f., old name of Cephalonia.

sanguineus, -a, -um [sanguis], *bloody, dipped in blood*.

sanguinolentus, -a, -um, *bloody*.

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood*.

sapiēns, -entis, *wise*.

sapor, -ōris, n., *taste, flavour*.

Sarmaticus, -a, -um, *Sarmatian*.

satis, adv., *sufficient, enough*.

Saturnus, -ī, m., *Saturn*, the ancient god of agriculture in Italy.

satyrus, -ī, m., *a satyr*.

Sauromatae, -ārum, m., *the Sarmatians*, a tribe living between the Don and the Vistula.

saxum, -ī, m., *a rock*.

scelerātus, -a, -um [scelus], *wicked, criminal*.

scelus, -eris, n., *crime*.

scienter [sciō], adv., *skilfully*.

scilicet [scīre, licet], adv., *assuredly*.

scindō, -ere, scidi, scissus, *rend*.

sciō, scīre, scivī, (scit) scitus, *know*.

scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, *write*.

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.

sē, see **suī**, 240.

secō, -āre, secuī, sectus, *cut, intersect*.

secrētō, adv., *secretly*.

secundus, -a, -um [sequor], *follow-ing, second, favourable*.

sed, conj., *but*.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessurus, *sit*.

sēdēs, -is [sedeō], f., *seat*.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *insurrectionary, seditious, reckless*.

sella, -ae, f., *chair*.

semel, adv., *once (a single time)*.

Cf. **ōlim**.

semper, adv., *ever, always*.

senātor, -ōris, m., *senator*.

senātus, -ūs [senex], m., *council of elders, senate*.

senex, senis, *old, aged man*.

senior, -ōris [senex], m. and f., *elder, senior*.

sensus, -ūs, m., *feeling*.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, realize, perceive*.

septem, num. adj., *seven*.

septimūs, -a, -um, num. adj. ord., *seventh*.

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, *follow*.

serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, *sow, plant*.

sērus, -a, -um, *late*.

serviō, -īre, -ivī, servitūrus [servus], *be a slave to, serve, give heed to*.

Servius Tullius, -ī, m., *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, preserve, keep, exhibit*.

servus, -ī, m., *slave*.

seu . . . seu (or **sive . . . sive**), conj., *whether . . . or*, (sometimes) *either . . . or*.

sex, adj., *six*.

sī, conj., *if*.

sibi, reflex. pron., see 224.

sic, adv., *thus, so, in such a manner*.

Cf. **tam**.

siccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [siccus], *drain*.

siccus, -a, -um, *dry*.

sīdus, -eris, n., *star, constellation*.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show (by signs), indicate, signify*.

signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mark out*.

signum, -ī, n., *sign, signal*.

silentium, -ī, n., *silence*.

silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods*.

Silvius, -ī, m., *Silvius*, the name of several kings of Alba. [as.]

simul, adv., *at the same time, as soon*.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pretend*.

sīn, conj., *but if*.

sine, prep., *without*.

singulī, -ae, -a, dis. num. adj., *one by one, one apiece, single, separate*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left (hand), unfavourable*.

sinus, -ūs, m., *bosom, bay*.

sistō, -ere, stiti, status, *stand, put*.

sive, see **seu**.

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law*.

societās, -ātis [socius], f., *alliance, association, society*.

socius, -ī, m., *associate, ally*.

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum (semi-deponent), *be accustomed, be wont.*
solidus, -a, -um, *solid.*
solum (sōlus), adv., *only, alone.*
solum, -i, n., *soil.*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, single, sole.*
solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtus, *loosen, break up, melt, pay (debt); solve.*
somnus, -i, m., *sleep.*
sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise.*
sonō, -āre, sonui, sonitūrus, *sound.*
sonus, -i, m., *sound.*
sōpiō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, *put to sleep; stun, render unconscious.*
sordidus, -a, -um, *filthy, soiled (clothes) [worn as a sign of mourning], sordid.*
soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*
sors, sortis, f., *lot, chance, fate.*
spatium, -i, n., *space, time, opportunity.*
speciēs, -ēi, f., *brilliance, show, appearance.* [spectacle.
spectāculum, -i [spectō], n., *show,*
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *watch, witness, look at.*
spēlunca, -ac, f., *cavern.*
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], *hope.*
spēs, -ei, f., *hope.*
spiculum, -i, n., *sting.*
spīritus, -ūs, m., *breathing, breath, spirit; high spirit, pride, arrogance.*
spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *breathe.*
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.*
spolium, -i [spoliō], n., *booty, spoil.*
Spurius Tarpēius, -i, m., *Spurius Tarpeius, a commander of the guard at the Capitol.*
squāleō, -ēre, —, —, *be rough, filthy.*
squālidus, -a, -um, *filthy.*
stans, stantis, pres. part., stō, *standing, prominent, protruding.*

statim, adv., *at once, immediately.*
stator, -ōris [stō], m., *the slayer, Stator, an epithet applied to Jupiter (444).*
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [stō] (*make stand*), *set up, erect, station, place. determine, decree, decide; dē . . . statuere, to pass judgment upon.*
stella, -ac, f., *star.*
stimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spur on, incite, stimulate.*
stipes, -itis, m., *log, trunk, tree.*
stipula, -ac, f., *stalk, straw.*
stīva, -ac, f., *plough handle.*
stō, -āre, steti, statūrus, *stand, stand firm.*
stridō, -ere, stridi, *shriek, whistle.*
stridor, -ōris, m., *hum, buzz.*
strix, -gis, f., *screech-owl.*
studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be zealous for, strive for, devote (one's self) to, favour, desire, study, be interested in.* [study.
studium, -i [studeō], n., *zeal, desire,*
stupeō, -ēre, -puī, *be bewildered.*
suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *advise, urge.*
sub, prep., with acc. after verbs of motion and abl. after verbs of rest, *under, at the foot of, near, up to.*
sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *come up, suggest itself.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
Sublicius, -a, -um (*resting on piles*), *Sublician, the name of a bridge at Rome.*
sublimis, -e, *uplifted, borne aloft, through the sky.*
sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *funish.*
sub-sido, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *sink.*
subsidium, -i, n., *relief, assistance.*
sub-siliō, -īre, -silui or -siliī, —, *leap up.*

sub-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be near*. [*up*.

sub-vehō, -ere, -vĕxī, -vectus, *bring*

suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *come near to ; succeed*.

Suēvī, -ōrum, m., *the Suevi*, a German tribe. [(240).

suī, reflex. pron., *of himself*, etc.

sulcus, -ī, m., *furrow*.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be* (480).

summa, -ae, f., *sum, total*.

summus, see **superus** (186, 2).

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, assume, consume, spend*.

suō, -ere, suī, sūtus, *stitch, sew*.

super, prep. with acc. and abl., *over, above, upon, beyond*.

superbī [superbus], adv., *proudly, haughtily*.

superbia, -ae [superbus], f., *pride, haughtiness*.

superbus, -a, -um [super], *proud, haughty*.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [superus], *rise above, outdo, surpass, overcome, defeat*.

superstitiō, -ōnis, f., *superstition*.

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be over, remain, survive, outlive*.

superus, -a, -um [super], *above, higher* (186, 2) ; *former* (in time).

supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment*.

sup-pōnō, -ere, supposuī, suppositus, *place under*.

sūprēmus, -a, -um, *highest, last*.

surgō, -ere, surrexī, surrectūrus [*sub-regō*], *arise*.

sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*sub-capiō*], *undertake, take up, begin, ordain ; undergo, incur*.

sus-piciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus [*sub-speciō*], *look up to, respect ; look at ; mistrust, suspect*.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion*.

suspikor, -āri, -ātus sum, *suspect*.

sus-tineō, -ere, -tinuī, -tentus [*sub-teneō*], *hold up, sustain, hold out, endure, withstand*.

sus-tulērunt, see **tollō**.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)* (241).

T

T. = **Titus**, -ī, m., *Titus*, a personal name.

tacitus, -a, -um, *silent, without speaking*.

tālis, -e, *such*. *

tam, adv., *so, to such a degree*.

tamen, *nevertheless, yet*.

tamquam, conj., *as if, as it were*.

Tanaquil, -īlis, f., *Tanaquil*, the wife of *Quintus Priscus*.

tandem, adv., *at length, at last*.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactus, *touch, reach*.

tantum, adv., *only*.

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such*.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius*, the name of an early Roman family, of whom two, **Priscus** and **Superbus**, were kings of Rome.

Tartara, -ōrum, n. (plur. only), *Tartarus*, the infernal regions.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull*.

tectum, -ī, n., *covering, roof, house, home*.

tegō, -ere, texī, tectus, *cover*.

tēla, -ae, f., *warp, loom*.

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon*.

Temesaeus, -a, -um, *of Temese* (a town in S. Italy).

tempestās, -ātis [tempus], f. (*the state of the time*), *weather ; storm, tempest*.

templum, -ī, n., *temple*.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tempt, try*.

tempus, -oris, n., *time*. [*stretch*.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus (tensus)

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, *hold*.

tener, -era, -erum, *tender, delicate*.

tepeō, -ēre, —, —, *be warm*.

ter, adv., *thrice*.

tergum, -i, n., *back*.

ternī, -ae, -a, dis. num. adj., *three each, three together, triplets*.

terra, -ae, f., *land, earth, ground*.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten*.

terror, -ōris [terreō], m., *terror, fright*.

tertius, -a, -um, *third*.

testa, -ae, f., *vessel, cup*.

testis, -is, m. and f., *witness*.

Tiberis, -is, m., *the Tiber, a river of Italy*.

tībicen, -inis, m., *prop.* [of.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid*

timidus, -a, -um [timeō], *timid*.

timor, -ōris [timeō], m., *fear, fright*.

tintinābulum, -i, n., *a bell*.

Tīrynthius, -a, -um, *of Tīryns (in Argolis)*.

Titūrius, -i, m., *Titurinus, a lieutenant of Cæsar*.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *take up, pick up, raise*.

tonitrus, -i, m., *thunder*.

torpescō, -ere, -puī, *grow numb, listless*.

torus, -i, m., *couch*.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many, as many*.

totiēns, adv., *so often, as often*.

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, total, entire, all*.

trābs, trabis, f., *beam, eaves*.

trā-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *hand over, give up, surrender; relate, hand down by tradition*.

trā- (or **trāns**)**dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across*.

trahō, -ere, traxī, tractus, *draw, derive*.

trāns, prep. with acc., *across, on the other side of, over*.

trāns-eō, -ire, (ivī) -iī, -itus, *go across, cross, pass over*.

trāns-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *pierce through, stab*.

trānsiliō, -ire, -ūi, — [trāns-saliō], *leap across or over*.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *carry over, transport*.

tremō, -ere, -uī, —, *tremble, shiver*.

trepidus, -a, -um, *anxious, alarming*.

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three*.

trīduum, -i [trēs-diēs], n., *three days' time, three days*.

trīgeminus, -a, -um, *triple-born, triple; a triplet*.

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty*.

trinōdis, -e, *three-knotted*.

triplex, -icis, *triple, threefold*.

tristis, -is, *sad, gloomy*.

triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *celebrate a triumph*.

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy, an ancient city of Asia Minor*.

Trōiānus, -a, -um, *Trojan, a Trojan*.

trucidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *slaughter, murder*.

truncus, -i, m., *trunk*.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*.

tubicen, -inis, m., *a trumpeter*.

Tullus, -i, m., *Tullus, a personal name*.

tum, adv., *then, at that time*.

tumidus, -a, -um [tumeō], *swelling, swollen*. [tumult.

tumultus, -ūs, m., *uproar, disorder*.

tumulus, -i, m., *mound, hill*.

turba, -ae, f., *crowd, throng*.

turgeō, -ēre, tursī, *swell*.

turma, -ae, f., *a troop, squadron*.

turris, -is, f., *tower* (129).

tūtō [tūtus], adv., *safely*. [tutor.

tūtōr, -ōris [tūtus], m., *guardian*.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*.

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your* (241).

Typhoeus, -ī (acc. **Typhōea**), Typhoeus (a fire-breathing giant, buried under Mt. Ætna).

tyrannus, -ī, m., (absolute) ruler, tyrant.

U

ubi, interrog. or rel. adv., *where*.

ubi, conj., *as soon as, when*.

ubique, adv., *everywhere*. [ish.

ulciscor, -ī, ultus sum, *avenge, punish*, -a, -um, *any, any one* (200).

ulmus, -ī, f., *elm*.

ulterior, -ius, *further* (186, 1).

ultor, -ōris [ulciscor], m., *avenger*.

ulva, -ae, f., *sedge*.

umbra, -ae, f., *shadow, shade, ghost*.

umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder*.

unda, -ae, f., *water, wave*.

unde, interrog. or rel. adv., *whence, from which*.

undique [unde], adv., *everywhere, on all sides, from every direction, from all sources*.

unguis, -is, m., *nail, talon*.

universus, -a, -um, *all together, whole, entire; universal*.

ūnus, -a, -um, *one; alone, only* (202).

urbānus, -a, -um [urbs], *of the city*.

urbs, -is, f., *city*.

urgēō, -ēre, ursī, *press, press forward*.

urō, -ere, ussī, ustus, *burn*.

usque, adv., *still, ever*.

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage*.

ut, or **utī**, conj., *that, in order that; as, when*. [(200).

uter, -tra, -trum, *which* (of the two)?

uterque, -traque, -trumque [uter], *each* (of the two), *both* (200).

utinam, adv., *O that, would that*.

utrimque [uterque], adv., *on both sides*.

ūtōr, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ, adopt*. [or.

utrum, conj., . . . **an**, *whether* . . .

ūva, -ae, f., *a bunch of grapes*.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*.

V

vacca, -ae, f., *cow*.

[without.

vacuus, -a, -um, *vacant, destitute*,

vadum, -ī, n., *ford*; **vadō**, *by fording*.

vāgitus, -ī, m., *crying*.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, be well; have influence*.

validus, -a, -um [valeō], *strong*.

vallēs, -is, f., *valley*.

vānus, -a, -um, *vain, groundless*.

varius, -a, -um, *various, varied*.

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate*.

vastus, -a, -um, *immense*.

vehementer, adv., *vehemently, greatly*.

Vēientēs, -ium, plur., m., *the inhabitants of Veii*.

vel, conj., or.

vēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *veil*.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come*.

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *hunt*.

ventus, -ī, m., *wind*.

verbum, -ī, n., *word*.

vērē [vērus], adv., *truly, really*.

vereor, -ērī, -ītus sum, *fear, dread, reverence*.

vernō, -āre, — [vēr], *be springlike*.

verrō, -ere, verri, versus, *sweep, scour*. [against.

versus, prep. with acc., *towards*,

vertex, -icis, m., *head*.

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn*.

vērus, -a, -um, *true, real*.

vēscor, -ī, —, *eat*.

vesper, -eris, m., *evening*.

Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta, goddess of the hearth*.

Vestālis, -e [Vesta], *Vestal*.

vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (241).

vestigium, -ī, n., *footprint, track, trace*.

vestiō, -īre, -iī, *vestitus, clothe.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothes, a garment.*

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *forbid.*

vetus, -eris, *old, veteran.* [*trouble.*]

vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *harass,*

via, -ae, f., *road, street, way.*

vicinus, -a, -um [vicus], *near, neighbouring, neighbour.*

victor, -ōris, m., *a conqueror, victor.*

victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*

vicus, -i, m., *village.*

videō, -ēre, vidī, visus, *see ; pass. be seen, appear.*

viduus, -a, -um, *widowed ; as noun, vidua*, -ae, *a widow.*

vigilantia, -ae, f., *vigilance, watchfulness.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *a watch, vigilance.*

viginti, num. adj., *twenty.*

villa, -ae, f., *farm-house.*

Viminalis, -e, *Viminal*, one of the seven hills of Rome.

vincō, -ere, vici, victus, *conquer, overcome.*

vinculum, -i, n., *fetter.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *claim, demand.*

vinum, -i, n., *wine.*

viola, -ae, f., *violet.*

vir, -i, m., *man, husband.*

virga, -ae, f., *rod, switch.*

virgō, -inis, f., *virgin, maiden.*

virgula, -ae, f., *rod, twig.*

viridis, -e, *green.*

virtūs, -ūtis [vir], f., *manliness, courage, virtue.*

vis, vis, f., *force ; plur., strength.*

viscera, -um, n. (sing. rare), *flesh.*

visus, -ūs [videō], m., *look, sight, vision.*

vīta, -ae, f., *life.*

vitiō, -āre, āvi, -ātus, *spoil, mar.*

vitis, -is, f., *vine.*

vitium, -i, n., *vice, fault.*

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *avoid, shun.*

vivō, -ere, vixi, victurus, *live.*

vīvus, -a, -um [vivō], *living, alive.*

vix, adv., *scarcely.*

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call, summon.*

Vocontii, -ōrum, m., *the Vocontii, a tribe in Gaul.*

volāns, -tis [volō], *flying.*

volgō [volgus], adv., *among the multitude, generally, everywhere.*

volgus, -i, n., *the people, the common people.* [*flit about.*]

volitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [volō], *fly,*

volnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [volnus], *wound.*

volnus, -eris, n., *a wound.*

volō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, *fly.*

volō, velle, volui, —, *wish.*

Volsci, -ōrum, m., *the Volsci, a people of Latium.*

voltus, -ūs, m., *face.*

volucer, -cris, -e, *winged ; also, as noun, a bird.*

voluntās, -ātis [volō], f., *willingness, consent, good-will, wish, desire.*

voluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure.*

volvō, -ere, volvi, volūtus, *roll.*

vōmer, -eris, m., *plough-share.*

vomō, -ere, -ui, -itūrus, *vomit, belch forth.*

voveō, -ēre, vōvi, vōtus, *devote to, vow, solemnly promise.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, sound, speech, utterance.*

vulpēs, -is, f., *fox.*

Zephyrus, -i, m., *Zephyr, the west wind.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

a, or **an**, usually not translated.
able, *be able*, possum, posse, potui.
about (*concerning*), dē.
about to (313, 1).
active, ācer, ācris, ācre.
advance, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus.
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n*.
all, omnis, -e. [licuit.
allowed, **be allowed**, licet, licēre,
alone, sōlus, -a, -um (200).
already, iam.
although, cum.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m*.
ancestors, māiōrēs, *plur.*, *m*. (338, note 3).
and, et, atque (ac), -que (208, note 2).
and so, itaque.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -di, -spōnsus.
any, ūllus, -a, -um (200).
arms, arma, -ōrum, *plur.*, *n*.
ask, rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
at home, domī (354, 1).
at once, statim.
attack, *noun*, impetus, -ūs, *m*.
attack, *verb*, oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

B

battle, proelium, -ī, *n*.
because, quod.
because of, *expressed by abl.* (141).

become, fiō, fieri, factus sum.
better, *comp. of bonus* (184).
between, inter *with acc.*
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
body, corpus, -oris, *n*.
bold, audāx, -ācis.
book, liber, librī, *m*.
border, fīnis, -is, *m*.
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f*.
bring, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
bring to, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātus.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m*. [factus.
build (*a bridge*), faciō, -ere, fēcī,
but, sed.

C

call, vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *plur.*, *n*.
can (*be able*), possum, posse, potui.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus, *or expugnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, *or equitēs*, *plur. of eques*.
choose, dēligō, -ere, dēlēgi, dēlēctus.
citadel, arx, arcis, *f*.
city, urbs, urbis, *f*.
cohort, cohors, -tis, *f*.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m*.
commend, comprobō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus. [tus.
complete, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-

conquer, vincō, -ere, vicī, victus.
consent, voluntās, -ātis, *f*.
consul, cōsul, -is, *m*.
country (*land*), terra, -ae, *f*.
country (*native land*), patria, -ae, *f*.
country (*opposed to city*), rū, rū-
 ris, *n*.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f*.
cruelly, crudēliter.

D

danger, periculum, -ī, *n*.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, filia, -ae, *f*.
day, diēs, -ēī, *m*.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sus.
deputy, lēgātus, -ī, *m*.
desire, studium, -ī, *n*.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f*.
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *or* agō,
 -ere, ēgī, āctus.

E

eagle, aquila, -ae, *f*.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
end, finis, -is, *m*.
enemy, hostis, -is, *m*. and *f*.
entire, tōtus, -a, -um (200).
entrance, aditus, -ūs, *m*.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m*.
esteem, diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.

F

farmer, agricola, -ae, *m*.
farther, diūtius.
father, pater, -tris, *m*.
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *or* vereor,
 -ērī, veritus sum.
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

fire, incendium, -ī, *n*.; ignis, -is, *m*.
first, primus, -a, -um (186, 1).
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m*.
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m*.
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itus.
free, liber, -era, -erum.
free (*set free*), liberō, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātus.

frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum.
friend, amicus, -ī, *m*.
friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f*.
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

G

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f*.
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n*.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
go, eō, īre, (ivī) īi, itūrus.
go from, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n*.
great, magnus, -a, -um.
greatest, summus, -a, -um.
guard, custōs, -ōdis, *m*. and *f*.

H

harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
head, caput, -itis, *n*.
hear, audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itus.
heavy, gravis, -e.
help, auxilium, -ī, *n*.
hem in, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
high, altus, -a, -um.
higher (*in position*), superior
 (186, 2).
hill, collis, -is, *m*.; *or* mōns, -tis, *m*.
himself, ipse (256); sē (256, note).
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus.
hold out, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
home, domus, -ūs (210, b.), *f*.
hope, *noun*, spēs, speī, *f*.
hope, *verb*, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

horse, equus, -i, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.* and *f.*

I

in, in *with the abl.*
induce, inducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*; or *plur. of pedes, -itis, m.*
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī, —, or habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.*
into, in *with acc.*

J

javelin, pilum, -i, *n.*
just, iustus, -a, -um.

K

keeper, custōs, -ōdis, *m.* and *f.*
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, scīre, scīvi, scītus.

L

labour, labor, -ōris, *m.*
Laelius, Laelius, -i, *m.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
learn, cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.
leave, relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
less, minor, minus (184).
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -i, *m.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
live (*dwelt*), habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

live (*be alive*), vivō, -ere, vixī, victus.

lofty, altus, -a, -um.
long, longus, -a, -um.
long (*a long time*), diū (195).
love, amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
make war upon, bellum inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus.
man, homō, -inis, *m.*, or vir, -i, *m.*
many, *plur. of multus, -a, -um.*
march, *noun*, iter, itineris, *n.*
march, *verb*, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
master, magister, -trī, *m.*, or dominus, -i, *m.* (64).
may, *expressing a wish or exhortation* (397), *expressing permission*, licet (488).
messenger, lēgātus, -i, *m.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
most, plūrimus, -a, -um (184).
mountain, mōns, mōntis, *m.*
much, multus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
near, ad *with acc.*
nearest, proximus (186, 1).
neighbour, finitimus, -i, *m.*
neighbouring, finitimus, -i, *m.*
neither, neque; *adjective*, neuter, -tra, -trum.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus (186, 1).
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no, nūllus, -a, -um (200).
nor, neque (nec).
now, nunc; **now** (*already*), **now** (*at last*), iam.
number, numerus, -i, *m.*

O

on, in *with the abl.*

once, at **once**, statim.

once (*formerly*), olim.

one, ūnus, -a, -um; **the one**, alter, -era, -erum.

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, -igis, *m.*

other (*another*), alius, -a, -ud (200).

other (*the other*), alter, -era, -erum (200).

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

outer, exterior, -ius (186, 2).

own (*his, her, its, their*), suus, -a, -um.

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

people, populus, -ī, *m.*

place, locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

place (*a legion*), conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *or* cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.

place before, antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

plan, cōsiliū, -ī, *n.*

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

plow, arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

poor (*pitiāble*), miser, -era, -erum.

position, locus, -ī, *m.*

praise, laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

prefer rather, mālō, mälle, mālūī.

protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

prudent, prūdēns, -dentis.

punish, pūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus.

Q

quick, celer, celeris, celere.

quickly, celeriter.

R

raid, excursiō, -ōnis, *f.*

rapid, celer, celeris, celere.

rather, potius *or* magis.

reference, with **reference to**, dē, *with the abl.*

reject, recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.

return (*come back*), redeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus.

return (*give back*), reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus.

river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*

road, iter, itineris, *n.*

rule, regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus.

S

safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

same, idem, eadem, idem.

save, servō *or* cōservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

sea, mare, maris, *n.*

see, videō, -ēre, vidī, visus.

seek, petō, -ere, petiī (-ivī), petītus.

seem, *passive of* videō.

seize (*a town or place*), occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

seize (*arms*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, capītus.

send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.

severe, gravis, -e.

shall, *sign of the future.*

ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.

side, pars, partis, *f.*

six, sex.

slave, servus, -ī, *m.*

slay, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.

so, ita; **and so**, itaque.

so (*in such a manner*), sic.

so (*to such a degree*), tam.

soldier, miles, -itis, *m.*

son, filius, -ī, *m.*

soon, mox.

spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*

spiritedly, ācritēr.

state, civitās, -ātis, *f.*

station, cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.

struggling, labōrāns, -antis.

surpass, superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

swift, celer, celeris, celere.

sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.

tall, altus, -a, -um.

teach, doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus.

tenth, decimus, -a, -um.

than, quam (172).

that, *demonstr. pron.*, ille, illa, illud.

that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.

that, *conj.*, ut.

thing, rēs, rei, *f.*

think, putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *or ar-*
bitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

third, tertius, -a, -um.

this, hīc, haec, hōc.

those, *plural of ille or is.*

thousand, mille (202, *c*).

through, *per with acc.*

till, dum, dōnec.

too, *expressed by comp. deg.* (178).

town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*

trust, crēdō, -ere, crēdidi, crēditus.

two, duo, duae, duo (202).

U

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxi,
-lēctus.

unwilling, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle,
nōluī.

urge, hortor *or* cohortor, -ārī, -ātus
sum.

us. See ego (240).

V

very, *expressed by superl. deg.*
(178).

veteran, vetus, veteris.

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

vigilance, vigilantia, -ae, *f.*

village, vicus, -ī, *m.*

W

wage (*war*), gerō, -ere, gessi, ges-
tus.

wait, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.

warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus.

watchfulness, vigilantia, -ae, *f.*, *or*
diligentia, -ae, *f.*

weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*

well, bene.

what? quis, quae, quid?

what (*that which*), id quod.

when, cum.

where, ubi.

which, quī, quae, quod.

who, quī, quae, quod.

who? quis, quae, quid?

why, cūr.

willing, be willing, volō, velle,
voluī.

wise, sapiēns, -entis.

wisely, sapienter.

wish, volō, velle, voluī.

with, cum, *with abl.*

without, sine, *with abl.*

woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*

work, labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.

wound, volnus, -eris, *n.*

wounded, volnerātus, -a, -um.

write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus.

INDEX

- Ablative, case, 21, *e*.
 absolute, 334.
 of accompaniment, 120.
 of agent, 77.
 of cause, 141.
 of comparison, 172.
 of description or quality, 392.
 of manner, 119.
 of means or instrument, 48.
 of measure of difference, 180.
 of place where, 354, 1 and *a*.
 of place whence, 354, 3 and *a*.
 of separation, 379.
 of specification, 157, 158.
 of time, 219.
 with *opus* and *usus*, 380.
 with *amor*, *fructus*, etc., 366.
-abus, in dative and ablative, 51, note 2.
 Accent, 17.
 in contracted gen., and voc. of nouns in *-ius*, 44, *b*.
 Accusative case, 21, *d*.
 direct object, 30, 385.
 double object, 377.
 extent of time and space, 221.
 subject of infinitive, 306.
 Adjectives, first and second declension, 52, 53, 61.
 third declension, 145.
 irregular (gen. in *-ius*), 200.
 as nouns, 243, note 1.
 possessive, 241.
 predicate, 86, *b*.
 compared. See Comparison.
 Adverbs, formation, 192.
 comparison, 192, 193-195.
 Agreement, of adjectives, 54.
 appositives, 83.
 predicate noun, 85.
 relative pronoun, 236.
 participles, 312.
 verbs, 31.
 Apposition, 82.
 Assimilation, 267, *a*.
audiō. See Conjugation.
 Base. See Root.
capiō. See Conjugation.
causā. See Vocabulary.
 Characteristic vowels of the five declensions, 45; of the four conjugations, 103, *a*.
 Comparative, declined, 169; special meaning, 178.
 Comparison of adjectives, regular, 168, 176, 177; irregular, 184, 186; of adverbs, 192.
 Compound verbs, 267.
 Conditional sentences, 421-424.
 Conjugation:
 I, *laudō*, 28, 70, 74, 97, 271, 473.
 II, *monēō*, 35, 70, 75, 97, 271, 476.
 III, *regō*, 103, III, 271, 477.
 capiō, 107, III, 271, 478.
 IV, *audiō*, 479.
 deponent verbs, 485, 486.
 irregular verbs, 480-484.
 Contraction in gen. of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 44, *b*; in the perf. stem of verbs, 332, note 4.

- iē* with subjunctive, 273, 396.
- ne* in questions, 56.
- nōlō*, conjugation, 481; *nōlī*, with infinitive, 347.
- Nominative case, 21, *a*; as subject, 29; as predicate, 85.
- nōnne* in questions, 56.
- Number, singular and plural, 21.
- Numerals, 467.
- Order of words, 41, *a*, *b*, 68, note 1.
- Participles, formation, 311, *a-d*; uses, 312; tenses, 409, 410. in deponent verbs, 486.
- Particles, 20, *c*.
- Passive voice, 75, *b* and *d*.
- Periphrastic conjugation, 475.
- Place where, whither, whence, 354.
- plūs*, declined, 185.
- Possessive adjectives, 241.
- possum*, 480.
- Postpositives, 435, note 14.
- Predicate adjectives, 86, *b*, and 87. nouns, 84, 85.
- Principal parts of verbs, 97.
- Pronouns, demonstrative, *is*, *idem*, etc., 245-256. indefinite, *quis*, *aliquis*, etc., 402. interrogative, 233. reflexive, 240, 241, *c*. relative, 232. personal, 240.
- Pronunciation, 4-7.
- Proper names, 112, *a*.
- prōsum*, 480.
- Purpose, expressed by subjunctive, 273, 336. by gerundive with *ad*, 319, *a*. by supine, 321.
- Quantity, 13.
- que*, enclitic, 16; position, footnote 2, p. 83.
- Questions, direct, 56. indirect, 286.
- regō*. See conjugation.
- Roman History, 437-451.
- Root, 22, *b*.
- rūs*, 354, 2; *rūrī*, 354, 1.
- sē*. See *suī*.
- Semi-deponent verbs, 487.
- Sequence of tenses, 288-290, 405, 406.
- Stem, defined, 22, *b*; in dec. I, 22, *b*; in dec. II, 44; in dec. III, 118, *a*, and 130, 138; in dec. IV, 210; in dec. V, 216. in conjugation, 103, *a*; perfect, 100, *d*.
- Story of Demosthenes, 154.
- Story of Deucalion and Pyrrha, 227.
- Story of Midas, 262.
- Subjunctive, formation, 271, *a-d*; 285, *a*, *b*. general use, 277. hortatory subjunctive, 397. in conditions, 423-425. indirect discourse, 384. indirect questions, 287. indirect requests, 398, 399. of purpose, 273, 336. of result, 281. with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 416, *b*. with *cum*, 279. with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, 415, *b*. with verbs of fearing, 396.
- suī*, declined, 240; distinguished from *is* or *ille*, 241, *c*, and 248, *d*; from *ipse*, 256, note.
- sum*, 81, 91, and 480.
- Supine, 318-321.
- suus*, formation and meaning, 241; distinguished from *eius* or *illius*, 241, *c*, and 248, *b*.

- Syllables, 10, 15.
 Synopsis, 474.
 System, present, 99, *b*; perfect, 99, *b*.
 Temporal clauses with indicative,
 279, *a*; 415, 416, *a*; 419.
 with subjunctive, 279, 415, *b*; 416, *b*.
 Tenses, of subjunctive, 288-290, 405, 406.
 of infinitive, 409, 411.
 of participles, 409, 410.
 Tense-signs, imperfect, 70, *b*; future, 70, *c*, and 103, *c*; pluperfect and future perfect, 99, *c*.
ut, meaning *as*, or *when*, with the indicative, 419, note.
 Vocative case, 21, note; form, 44
 a, *c*; use, 47.
Volō, 481.
 Vowels, 4.
 Wishes, 426.

L.B.S. National Academy of Administration, Library

MUSSOORIE

This book is to be returned on the date last stamped

[illegible]

लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी

L.B.S. National Academy of Administration

मसूरी

MUSSOORIE

पुस्तकालय

LIBRARY

110069

अवाप्ति संख्या

Accession No.

~~19299~~

वर्ग संख्या

Class No.

470.07

पुस्तक संख्या

Book No.

MCU